

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1994

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear
within the text. Whenever possible, these have
been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Continuous pagination/
Pagination continue
- Includes index(es)/
Comprend un (des) index
- Title on header taken from: /
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:
- Title page of issue/
Page de titre de la livraison
- Caption of issue/
Titre de départ de la livraison
- Masthead/
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

- Additional comments: / Pages 39-42 are bound incorrectly. Pages 92 & 143 are incorrectly numbered
Commentaires supplémentaires: pages 62 & 145. Various pagination.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

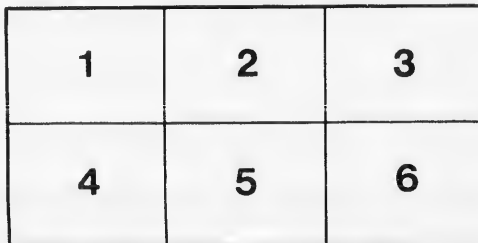
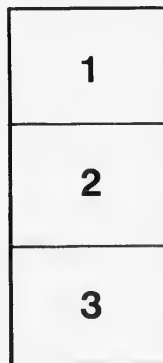
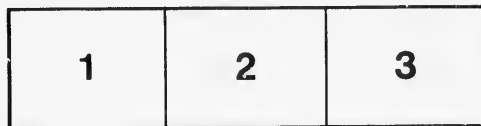
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10

11.2

12.5

14

16

18

20

22.5

25

28

32

36

40

45

50

56

63

71

80

90

100

112

125

140

160



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

D

N

Che

M

The
M
Buc
Yea

Printed
at the
Ang

AN
A C C O U N T
O F
Monsieur de la SALLE's
L A S T
Expedition and DISCOVERIES
I N
North AMERICA.

Presented to the *French* King,

And Published by the

Chevalier *Tonti*, Governour of Fort St. *Louis*, in the Province of the *Illinois*.

Made *English* from the *Paris* Original.

A L S O
The ADVENTURES of the Sieur de
MONTAUBAN, Captain of the *French*
Buccaneers on the Coast of *Guinea*, in the
Year 1695.

L O N D O N,

Printed for *J. Tonson* at the *Judge's Head*, and *S. Buckley*
at the *Dolphin* in *Fleet-street*, and *A. Knaplock*, at the
Angel and Crown in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*. 1698.

Feb. 12

A

N

T

self upon
tion from
it would
Preface
Mon
of Roan
taker of
America
ter of the
ordinary
page.
the Def
of Front

A NEW
 ACCOUNT
 OF THE
Northern-America.

TRUTH and Sincerity being the chief Qualities, which make a Book of this nature Valuable, the Author of this promises himself upon that account a favourable Reception from the Publick: and therefore thinks it would be superfluous to make a longer Preface.

Monſieur Cavelier de La Salle, a Native of Roan in Normandy, the chief Undertaker of the Discoveries in the *Northern America*, which make the Subject-Matter of this Book, was a Man of extraordinary Parts, and undaunted Courage. He was the first that formed the Design of Travelling from the Lake of *Frontenac* in *Canada*, to the Gulph of
 B Mexico,

M. De la Salle.

Mexico, through a vast unknown Country, in order to bring the Inhabitants to the Knowledge of the Christian Religion, and Extend the Dominions of the King of *France*. This Gentleman having duly weighed all the Difficulties that were like to cross so Noble a Design, came to Court to acquaint his Majesty with it, who was pleased not only to approve his Enterprize, but also to Encourage it, by the Liberal Assistance, and the Power he gave to *M. La Salle*, to dispose of his New Discoveries as he should think fit.

I was then at the Court of *France* to solicit some Employment, having served his Majesty both by Sea and Land, and lost one Hand in *Sicily* by a *Granado*, and as *M. La Salle* was upon his departure, the Prince of *Conti* was pleased to recommend me to him, as fit to accompany him in his Undertaking, whereupon I was easily admitted, the Patronage of His Highness having been very useful to *M. La Salle*. Every thing being ready for our departure, we set sail from *Rochel*, *July 14. 1678.* to the number of 30 Men, amongst whom were Pilots, Carpenters, Smiths and other useful Artists, and arrived at

Quebec

Que
ing;
whi
Fron
we
Fort
T
from
Lati
led l
is ne
comm
much
Lake
store
tranc
Fort
migh
again
As M
the K
there
about
Coun
it is i
The v
Wood
Fruit-
Brook

M. De la Salle.

3

lle.
unknown Coun-
the Inhabitants
Christian Re-
Dominions of
his Gentleman
the Difficulties
Noble a De-
acquaint his
s pleased not
prize, but al-
e Liberal Af-
he gave to
his New Dis-
fit.
of France to
nt, having
by Sea and
Sicily by a
e was upon
Conti was
him, as fit
ndertaking,
mitted, the
having been
very thing
re, we set
78. to the
gft whom
nicks and
rrived at
Quebec

Quebec upon the 15th of September follow-
ing; we remained there some days, after
which having taken our Leave of Count
Frontenac Governor-General of Canada,
we sailed up the River St. Laurence to
Fort Frontenac, where we landed.

That Fort lyes within 120 Leagues
from Quebec, about the 44th Degree of
Latitude, on the Mouth of a Lake cal-
led likewise Frontenac or Ontario, which
is near 300 Leagues about, and has a
communication with four other Lakes;
much of the same extent. All those
Lakes are Navigable, and plentifully
stored with Fish; The Mouth, or en-
trance of this Lake is defended by a
Fort with four large Bastions, which
might protect a great number of Vessels
against the attempts of any Enemy.
As M. La Salle had Erected this Fort,
the King had given him the Propriety
thereof, and of all the Lakes there-
abouts with their dependencies. The
Country about it is so Charming, that
it is impossible to describe its Beauties:
The vast Meadows are intermixed with
Woods and Forests, full of all sorts of
Fruit-Trees; and watered with fine
Brooks and Rivers.

It was in this place that we prepared our selves for our great Voyage, and Glorious Undertaking, of which no body, I am sure, can give a better account than my self, not only because I accompanied the said *M. La Salle*, but also because the chief Care and Burthen of that Perilous, tho' Glorious Enterprize, fell upon me by the untimely Death of that Gentleman. The Account which I offer now to the Publick, is extracted out of the Journal I kept, wherein I set down things as they appeared to me: 'Tis true, I am sometimes obliged to take things upon Trust, because I could not be always with *M. La Salle*, but I am so fully convinced of the Probity and Honesty of those upon whose Evidence I have advanced any thing, that I may answer as well for their Observations as for my own. The Reader must not therefore expect here Noble and Pompous Descriptions, such as Authors use to adorn their Works with, but a natural simplicity, and a rigid fidelity. If my Stile seems harsh and unpolite, I have no other Apology for it, but that I may have contracted some thing from the Commerce

lle.

we prepared
Voyage, and
which no bo-
a better ac-
ly because I
La Salle, but
and Burthen
rious Enter-
ne untimely
The Ac-
the Publick,
nal I kept,
as they ap-
I am some-
upon Trust,
ways with
ly convin-
ty of those
advanced
er as well
my own.
re expect
scriptions,
orn their
implicity,
tile seems
no other
may have
the Com-
merce

M. De La Salle.

5

merce of the Savages of *America*, with whom I have so long conversed.

Whosoever considers this Enterprize in it self, the difficulties it was attend- ed with, and the advantages that *Eu- rope* may reap from the discovery of those vast Countries, which are above eighteen hundred Leagues North and South, will I hope agree, that an ex- act account thereof is worthy of the Cu- riosity of the Reader.

That large Country is now called by ^{The Ferti-} the name of *Louisiana*, since the ^{lity of the} French ^{Soil.} took possession thereof in the Name of *Lewis* the Great. The Soil is, generally speaking, so fertile, that it produces Naturally without any Culture, those Fruits that Nature and Art together have much ado to bring forth in *Europe*: They have two Crops every Year without any great fatigue; the Vines bring extraordinary Grapes, without the Care of the Husbandmen; and the Fruit-Trees need no Gardiners to look after them; the Air is every where temperate; the Country is watered with Navigable Rivers, and delicious Brooks and Rivulets, and diversified with Forests and Meadows; it is stockt with all sorts of Beasts, as Bulls, *Orig- nac's*,

M. De La Salle.

nac's, Wolves, Lines, Wild Asses, Stags, Goats, Sheep, Foxes, Hares, Beavers, Otters, Dogs, and all sorts of Fowls, which afford a plentiful Game for the Inhabitants. They have discovered Mines of Lead and Iron, and 'tis not doubted but there are also Mines of Gold and Silver, if they would give themselves the trouble to look for them, but the Inhabitants of those Countries valuing things only as far as they are necessary for Life, are yet unacquainted with the Fanciful Value we put upon those Metals, and have not dig'd up the Earth to look for them.

The Manners of the Inhabitants.

Those Inhabitants have nothing of Man but the Shape and the Name; they live without any Laws, Religion, Superiority, or Subordination, Independency and Liberty being their *Summum Bonum*, or the ultimate end they propose to themselves. Their Life is always wandering, having no settled Possessions; they take several Wives, if they please, whom they quit when they will, and leave them to others, just as they do their Habitations, for after having for some time cultivated a piece of Ground, they quit it without any occasion to Cultivate another, and the

first

first comer takes possession thereof, so that they are perpetually changing their Habitations, and by this continual motion, every thing becomes in a manner common amongst them: they know no Superiority, and think the World is made only for them.

I said they have no Religion, tho' it ^{Their Reli-} seems they have an obscure Idea of God, ^{gion.} because they live as if they thought there was none. They believe in general that there is a God, but who does not concern himself in what they do. Some Worship the Sun, and others fancy that the World is full of certain Spirits, who preside over their Actions, and they are so extravagant as to believe, that every thing in the World has a Spirit, and that they are Good or Hurtful according to the *Caprice* of that Spirit. 'Tis upon this Principle that are grounded all the foolish Superstitions of their *Jugglers* or *Monitous*, who are their Priests or Magicians.

I don't believe that they have carried their Reflections so far, as to think on the Nature of their Souls; tho' 'tis true, they seem to believe their Immortality, and a kind of *Metempsychosis*, or Transmigration of Souls; but they have

M. De La Salle.

so many extravagant fancies upon this Subject, that it is in a manner impossible to discover their true Opinion. I may say in general, that they are so stupid in matters of Religion, that they are not convinced of their own Belief, nor of what others believe, and therefore Laugh at the Instructions of our Missionaries.

Their Good qualities.

However, notwithstanding that brutish temper, they have as good a Sense as the rest of Mankind, to know their true Interests, and therefore are capable of Negotiations, Commerce, and Counsel. They know how to weigh and consider the Consequences of an Enterprize, and take Just Measures to compass it. When they meet together to consult about some great Design, they sit in a private place, in a profound Silence, smoking Tobacco, and every one speaks gravely in his turn. It is to be observed by the by, that they never make any Treaty, Convention or Agreement with any body, till they have first of all, mutually exchanged Presents. They give commonly Collars as the Symbol of Union; they have a particular Kettle for Peace, and another for War. They proclaim Peace with
the

alle.

cies upon this manner im-true Opinion. t they are so on, that they r own Belief, e, and there- ctions of our

ling that bru- good a Sense e know their e are capable e, and Coun- o weigh and of an Enter- ures to com- t together to Design, they profound Si- and every n. It is to t they never on or Agree- they have anged Pre- y Collars as have a par- nd another Peace with the

M. De La Salle.

9

the *Calumet*, and War by great Out-cries, or rather dreadful Howlings.

They know likewise how to Incamp, and Forne their Camps with Intrench-ments and Pallifadoes. They observe also some Order in their Attacks. *Their Science in War.*

This Soil produces indifferently all sorts of Corn and Plants, but as they have observed, that some among them are more proper for their Nourishment than others, they take care to Sow and Cultivate them, and therefore they have great Crops of *Indian Corn*, of which they make a sort of very delicious and nourishing Pap. They Cultivate also what they call *Touquo*, of which they make their *Cassave*, and Turneps, where-with they make *Cassamite*. These are their own terms, which are not to be translated. There are in their Country several sorts of Trees, from which an excellent Balsam drops, the use where- of the Savages know very well, as also of several Plants against Wounds, and the venomous bitings or stinging of Ser-pents and other Creatures. *Their Phy-sick.*

Their Knowledge is not circumscri-bed within those narrow bounds, they carry it as far as Heaven, and have ob-tained a sufficient Knowledge of the Course *Their Astro-nomy.*

Course of the Sun, Moon and Planets and pretend thereby to foretel the changes of the Weather, Winds, Storms and other things of this nature.

Their Dexterity.

Besides those qualities already mentioned, they have a wonderful dexterity at several beautiful and useful Works. Some of them make extraordinary fine Mats for their Coverings, and adorning their Cabins; others have found the way to Dress Leather to make Wastecoats and Shoes; but their greatest dexterity appears, in my opinion, in the structure of their *Canoos* which can never sink. They make them with the Barks of Elm, Walnut-trees or Elder-trees, about 10 or 12 Foot long, the side being a little turned inward as *Gondolas*. Instead of Oars they make use of two pieces of Wood, like two Bakers Peals, and term *Swimming* what we call *Rowing*. As their *Canoos* draw very little Water, because of their lightness, the Savages *Swim* with an extraordinary swiftness, even against the stream of Rivers, and undertake very long Voyages without fearing Rocks or Storms.

Their Travels by Land.

Tho' there are neither Road nor Path in that Country, they Travel through these vast Forests and Wildernesses, with

alle.

on and Planets
to foretel the
Winds, Storms
nature.
s already men
nderful dexter
useful Works
aordinary fine
s, and adorn
s have found
her to make
ut their great
y opinion, in
os which can
hem with the
ees or Elder-
long, the side
d as *Gondolas*.
e use of two
Bakers Peals,
we call *Rom*.
w very little
ghtness, the
extraordinary
ne stream of
y long Voy-
s or Storms.
oad nor Path
vel through
Wildernesses,
with

M. De La Salle.

11

with the help of certain Marks they make upon the Rind of Trees from place to place ; and by these means, the Women and Children are able to find the Men when they go a Hunting, or upon any Expedition. They very seldome bring home what they kill, and it is the Office of their Wives to fetch it and dress it.

I think fit to add, in this Place, a *Their Cabins.* short Account of their Cabins, Household-Goods, and the like. Many of them are wandering in Woods, where they lie upon the Ground as Beasts ; but such who live together, make Cabins, or Huts, with Branches of Trees driven into the ground, interlaced with others, and joined at the top as close as possible, and covered with Reeds, or large Leaves of Trees. The inside looks somewhat better, it is well-enough Matted, and most of them have a sort of curious Floor.

Their Bedsteads are made up with *Their Beds.* some pieces of wood, upon which they lay skins full of Wool or Straw ; but for their Covering, they use the finest sort of Skins, or else Mats finely wrought.

They

Their Kitchen Utensils.

They have Cellars, or rather Holes to preserve their Corn, their Wood, and other Provisions; but all their Kitchen Utensils consists in some few pieces of Earthen-Ware, which they make with Clay, and harden it with the Dung of Bulls. They have no sorts of Mills but instead thereof, use to grind their Corn between two Stones, with a great deal of trouble. They make use of a sort of sharp Stones instead of Knives but this must be understood of such Savages, who never had any Commerce with *Europeans*.

Their Arms.

They use Bows and Arrows with great dexterity, and the extremity of their Arrow is arm'd, instead of Iron with a sharp Stone, or the Tooth of some Animal. They have besides heavy Clubs, or sharp Sticks, instead of Swords or Halberds. They use also wooden Corslets against Arrows, and make Bucklers with several skins stitched together.

Their Apparel.

Most of them go stark Naked, and are so inured to Rain, and other Hardships, that their bodies are almost insensible; and the soles of their Feet so hard, as to resist the sharpness of Thorns and Stones. Their Women have

Salle.
 or rather Hole
 their Wood, and
 all their Kitchin
 the few pieces of
 they make with
 the Dung of
 sorts of Mills
 to grind their
 es, with a great
 make use of
 head of Knives
 od of such Sa
 ny Commerce

have still preserved a shadow of Mode-
 sty, for they wear commonly about
 their waste a large Girdle, from which
 hang two pieces of skin, which cover
 in some manner their Nakedness. I
 speak of those Savages who Inhabit a
 Temperate Climate, for those who live
 to the Northward of *Quebec*, and other
 cold Countries, cover themselves with
 skins of Bears, Stags, Ellends, and the
 like. I must observe also, that those
 who Inhabit toward *Mexico*, seem more
 civilized than others; for tho' their
 Climate is pretty Hot, they cover them-
 selves with Mats finely wrought.

Arrows with
 extremity of
 instead of Iron
 the Tooth of
 have besides
 ks, instead of
 hey use also
 Arrows, and
 l skins stitch

The care of the Family lies equally
 upon the Husband and the Wife: The
 former goes a Fishing or Hunting for
 the Family; and the Wife Tills the
 ground, and gets in what she has sow'd.
 is likewise her Duty to fetch Fruit,
 herbs, and other things in the Woods.
 When the Savage is come back from
 hunting, he takes first of all his Pipe,
 and as he smoaks, tells his Wife what
 he has done, and what he would have
 her to do, which she must obey without
 any reluctancy.

*The care of
 the Family
 divided be-
 tween the
 Husband &
 the Wife.*

Naked, and
 other Hard
 almost insen-
 their Feet for
 sharpness of
 their Women
 have

One may observe in Men a great
 Gravity and Authority, and in Women
 an

*Charaller
 of the Sa-
 vages.*

an extraordinary Complaisance for their Husbands, and as they follow their Natural Instinct in every thing they do, their Behaviour is always sincere and without any affectation; and one may truly say, That the conjugal Union betwixt them, is the effect of a Natural Inclination, which is common to Men and to Brutes, and not founded upon a true Friendship.

of Women in particular.

The Savages being perpetually in Action, they are free from several Diseases that the *Europeans* are subject to, and 'tis observable, that these Women have not that natural Incommodity that ours are liable unto, and that, which is still more to be wonder'd at, they bring forth without any Pain, or at least without any ceremony as they go along, making no other Provision for it, than their own girdle, and some Skins to wrap up the Child into.

The Breeding of their Children.

They have a very extraordinary way to bring up their Children, for though they have no Clouts or Swath-Bands, they have found a way to keep them very clean without any great Trouble. They provide themselves with a good quantity of Dust of rotten Wood, which is as soft as any Down whatsoever, and

alle.

M. De La Salle.

15

complaisance for
they follow their
thing they de
ys sincere and
; and one may
gal Union be
t of a Natural
mmon to Men
ounded upon a
very good to preserve them against Hu-
midity. They lay their Children upon
that Dust, and wrap them into some
good Furs, and tie them pretty fast, and
have nothing to do for dressing them,
but to change that Dust, by means
whereof they keep them always clean,
all they are able to walk about.

They Feed them with Pap, made
with *Indian* Corn, and give them a
How 'they
feed them.
Bow as soon as they can walk ; so that
they use themselves to shoot, and follow
their Parents into the Woods, learning
thereby betimes the usual Places for
Hunting ; and having no manner of E-
ducation, they are only guided by their
Natural Inclination and Sensuality, as
beasts.

I should never make an End, should
underrake to give a particular Account
of all the Customs of the Savages ; but
think that what I have said is sufficient
to convince the Reader, that their In-
telligence extends only to what is Ne-
cessary for supporting their Natural
Life ; and that if they have any Law
amongst them, it is to observe none at
all. Born and bred up in Forrests, Hunt-
ing is their greatest Pastime, to which
may add War, Quarrels, and Cruelty,
which

which is such, that they must turn their Arms against harmless Beasts, when they want Pretences or Opportunities to use them against Men.

Mr. La Salle undertakes with 30 Men to Travel through those Nations.

It was through those Wild Nations that Mr. La Salle undertook to Travel and discover a Way to the Gulph of Mexico; and whosoever will impartially consider that Enterprize, must agree that this courageous Design can hardly be parallell'd. But this will appear the better, if they consider what Preparations he made for that great Journey. He had only *Thirty* Men, abroad, I have already said, without any other Provisions, but Powder and Shot, which were to supply him during his Voyage. We had first of all a Bark, and some Canoes, but we were soon deprived of that help, and forc'd to Travel by Land, and carry our Equipage, crossing large Rivers upon Rafts, or Trees, having no other Guide through those vast unknown Countries but a Compass, and the Genius of our Commander, who (according to the variation of the Needle, and the Knowledge he had in Astronomy) was able to guess at the Climate we were in, and what course we were to follow.

The

These Difficulties, the Armies of Sa-
 must turn their backs, which we were obliged to fight
 Beasts, when we were obliged to force our way, Hunger, Thirst, and
 Opportunities, other Wants and Perils, were however
 surmounted by our Courage and Con-
 Wild Nations, stancy, so that we arriv'd at the Gulph
 took to Travel of *Mexico*, and after several Misfortunes
 the Gulph returned Home. But before I proceed
 will impartially any further, I think fit to give an Ac-
 must agree count of the *Four Lakes* I have already
 can hardly mentioned.

The *First* lies above the 47 Degree of
 Latitude, and is called *Upper Lake*, or of
Frontenac, and may be 80 Leagues
 thirty Men, abroad, and 300 in circuit. It has com-
 munication with the Lake *Herie*, or of
Conti, by a Canal of above 20 Leagues
 long, interrupted by a Fall of 600 Foot
 high, known under the Name of *Fall of*
Niagara. This Lake of *Conti* joins with
 another called *The Lake of the Hurons*, or
 of *Orleans*, by a Canal or stream which
 is very Rapid, and this last Lake has
 communication to the *South* with a
 fourth, called, *The Lake of the Illinois*,
 of the *Dauphin*: It joins also by the
North-side with another Lake, larger
 than any of the rest, called, *The Lake of*
Conde; but we did not see it.

*The upper
 Lake, or
 superior
 Lake.*

C

Having

These

We Sail
from Fort
Frontenac.

Having Refreshed our selves about their
Fortnight at Fort *Frontenac*, we en hear
barqued on the 18th. of *Novembe* pow
1678. on Board a Vessel of 40 Tunn figh
to cross the first Lake I have mentione Poss
and this was the First Ship that eve and
Sail'd upon this Fresh Water Sea. Th three
Wind being very contrary, we spent are
whole Month before we could arrive a great
a Village called *St. Onnontouane*, where Cour
Mr. *La Salle* sent some Canoos to fete again
Indian Corn for our subsistence; and When
from thence we continued our Cour than
towards *Niagara*, but the Stream being try-m
too rapid, and the Wind contrary, w give
we were obliged to cast an Anchor abou of the
9 Leagues from that Place, whither w Cruel
went by Land. *Niagara* is a Villag preca
of the *Iroquois*, situated upon the Lak Exper
of *Conti*, near the wonderful Fall Thi
have taken Notice of. as I ha

An A-
count of
the Iro-
quois.

This Nation, the most Warlike and very k
Cruel of all the *Americans*, is possessed their V
of a Tract of Land from *Montreal*, o to view
rather from the place where the Two League
Rivers, which form that of *St. Lau* having
rence, meet, to the further end of the tion, A
Lake of *Conti*, which is about Two on of it
Hundred Leagues to the *South*. This upon it
Nation is very Ambitious to command but the
their

selves about their Neighbours; and when they
Montenac, we en hear of any other Nation which grows
 of *Novembe* powerful, either by the Number of their
 el of 40 Tunn fighting Men, or by the extent of their
 have mentione Possessions, they march to subdue them,
 Ship that eve and they make sometimes Excursions
 Water Sea. Th three or four hundred Leagues. They
 ary, we spent are indefatigable, undaunted in the
 e could arrive: greatest danger; and of such a fierce
Montouane, when Courage and Constancy, as to be proof
 Canoos to fetc against the most exquisite Torments,
 bstance; an When taken by their Enemies, rather
 ed our Cour than betray the Designs of their Coun-
 e Stream bein try-men: They never ask, and seldom
 contrary, w give Quarter. They drink the Blood
 Anchor about of their Enemies, and add to their great
 e, whither w Cruelty, all the Stratagems, Subtilty and
 a is a Villag precaution, that one might expect from
 upon the Lak Experienc'd Soldiers.

derful Fall This Nation, tho' Fierce and Cruel,
 as I have represented them, receiv'd us
 Warlike and very kindly. We laid one Night in
 s, is possess'd their Village, and went the next Day
Montreal, o to view a proper place, above Three
 here the Two Leagues higher, to Build a Fort, and
 t of *St. Lau* having found an advantagious Situa-
 er end of the tion, *M. De la Salle* laid the Foundati-
 about Two on of it, and ordered his Men to Work
South. This upon it with all imaginable Diligence;
 to command but the *Froquois* taking some Jealousie at
 their

*They re-
 ceive kind-
 ly the
 French.*

it; it was thought fit to desist, to avoid giving Offence to so dangerous an Enemy; and therefore we contented ourselves to fortifie our Magazine with strong Palifadoes.

M. la Salle had given orders for Building a new Ship or great Bark, and our Men workt about it with all the diligence that the Season of the Year could permit; but the cold was so excessive that not only Rivers, but even those vast Lakes were frozen all over, inso much that they look'd like a Plain pav'd with fine polish'd Marble. We traded in the mean time with the Natives, and got a great number of Furrs; but several things being wanting to continue our Voyage, this couragious Gentleman resolv'd to return by Land to Fort Frontenac, and come back again in the Spring with a new supply of Ammunition and Merchandise, to trade with the Nations he intended to visit. He sent likewise fifteen Men further into the Country, with orders to endeavour to find out the *Illinois*, and left his Fort on *Niagara*, and fifteen Men under my command. One of the *Recollects* continued with us.

The Winter being over, a Bark arrived from three

Salle.

to desist, to avoid
dangerous an Enemy
we contented our
Magazine with
orders for Build
at Bark, and our
with all the dili
of the Year could
was so excessive
but even those
in all over, info
like a Plain pav'
le. We traded
the Natives, and
urrs; but sever
to continue our
ous Gentleman
nd to Fort Fron
again in the
ly of Ammuni
to trade with
d to visit. He
further into the
endeavour to
est his Fort of
under my com
lets continue
a Bark arrived
from

M. De La Salle.

21

from Fort *Frontenac*, with Ammunition
and Merchandises, but it was stav'd to
pieces against the Coast, by the fault
of the Pilot, however most of the Ef-
fects were sav'd; and soon after; *M. la*
Salle arrived, who immediately renew-
ed his Commerce with the *Iroquois*, and
endeavour'd to give them some Idea of
the Power of the King, that they might
have some respect for his Subjects. This
new Ship being near finished, he sent
me with five Men to view the Coast,
and the Country to the North side of
the Lake, above 120 Leagues from *Nia-*
gara. We Embarked in our Canoos,
and having rowed two days, or rather
swom, to use the stile of the Savages, ar-
rived to the straight of the Lake *Heriè*.
This straight or Canal, by which the
Lake *Heriè* joins with that of the *Hu-*
rons, is about Thirty Leagues long. I
landed to the North side, and enquired
for the Men *M. la Salle* had sent before;
but hearing they were gone higher, I
advanced into the Country in hopes to
find them; and this gave me an oppor-
tunity to take an exact survey of that
delicious Peninsula, which has almost
the form of an Heart, by reason of the
three Lakes already mentioned.

Lake He-
rie.

M. De La Salle.

Having made all the Observations thought necessary both as to the Canals between the two Lakes, and the nature of the Soil, I returned to give an account thereof to M. la Salle, who, before my arrival, was gone back to Fort Frontenac with a considerable quantity of Furs, from whence he returned to Niagara, on the Seventh of August, 1679, with a fresh supply of Ammunition and Provisions, and three Recollects. The Spring and most part of the Summer were thus spent in frequent goings and comings, which however are absolutely necessary in order to make a good and lasting Settlement.

Our Bark being finished, and everything ready for our departure, we sailed towards the middle of August, and having happily crossed the Lake Heriè, got into that of the Hurons, which, as has been already said, is much larger than the other two. We met there with a dreadful Storm, as great as any that ever heard of upon the Ocean, or any other Sea, but we had the good Fortune to find a good Road called *Mississimachinac*. It is an *Isthmus*, or neck of Land about Twenty Leagues broad, and 120 long, between the Lake of the Hurons

Observations *ms* and that of the *Illinois*, which is one
 as to the Cana the finest situations in the World ; and
 and the nature of the soil, and all sorts of Game, the Inha-
 to give an ac- habitants have an extraordinary plenty of
 lle, who, before
 ck to Fort Fron ish.

le quantity of M. la Salle took an exact survey of *Fall S. Ma-*
 returned to Nia at fine Country, and having marked *ry.*
August, 1679 at a Fort for our security, sent me,
 mmunition and with some others, towards the North-
Recollects. The east, to observe the *Fall St. Mary*, and
 e Summer were endeavour to discover some of our De-
 ings and com- rters. This Fall forms two Canals,
 e absolutely ne- and a pretty large Illand, which being
 good and last- united, make a very Rapid River,
 y which the Lake of the *Hurons* has
 munication with another much lar-
 ed, and ever- ger than all the rest. I went a-shore
 ture, we sail- pon the Northern Coast of the Lake
August, and ha- *Huron*, and advanced through a most
 Lake *Heriè*, go- delicious Country, as fas as the River
 , which, as i- *Anta*, which coming out of that great
 much large lake, runs about a Hundred Leagues,
 met there wit- and falls into the River *St. Laurence*.
 t as any that The charming Prospect of the Banks of
 cean, or any hat River, made the Fatigues I suf-
 he good For- er'd very easie to me, tho I had no o-
 called *Missil-* her Provisions than what I could kill
 s, or neck of with my Gun. I spent Eight Days in
 ues broad, an- my Journey, and from thence went in-
 ke of the *Hu-*

to the Southern Canal I have spok
 of where I Landed. I discover'd the
 a large Plain between the Lake of the
 Hurons and that of the Illinois, and
 fine Settlement belonging to the Jesuit
 I found there also our Deserters, who
 appear'd, at first, very stubborn and
 disaffected, but were at last perswad
 to return with me to Missilimachin
 where I understood that M. la Salle had
 Sailed from thence towards the end
 September, for the Bay of Puans, wh
 he arriv'd the 8th of October, as I ha
 been informed since.

Bay of
 Puans.

This Bay of Puans is formed by the
 overflowing of the Lake of the Illinoi
 occasion'd by a great River, which falls
 into this Lake. This River call'd On
 comes from another Lake about
 100 Leagues distant; from which come
 another River, which falls into the
 Mississipi; and therefore this Lake may
 be lookt upon as a Communication betw
 tween Canada and the Gulph of Mexico
 as one may see by the Map.

M. la Salle being arriv'd in that Bay
 took some new measures, and sent his
 his Bark, laden with Furs, to Niagara
 and embarked again in Canoos with
 venteen Men and a Recollect, to go to
 the Situation

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

I have spokethe further end of the Lake of the Illi-
Discover'd theois, where he arrived the first of No-
the Lake of tember, 1679, and landed at the Mouth
the Illinois, and the River of the *Miamis*.

ing to the Jesuit This Country lies between the 35
Deserters, wind 40 degrees of Latitude; is bounded
ry Rubborn and the East by *Virginia* and *Florida*; and
at last perswade the other side by the *Iroquois* and the
to *Missilimachinillinois*. The Soil is very fertile, and
at M. la Salle introduces all sorts of Corn and Fruit;
wards the end it abounds also in Cattle and Fish. M.
of *Puans*, when Salle visited the Inhabitants, and find-
October, as I hang their Temper tractable, endeavou-
ed to gain their Friendship by Presents.

The Coun-
try of the
Miamis.

is formed by They exchanged some Merchandises,
ke of the *Illinond* M. la Salle managed this Trade
river, which savith so much prudence and dexterity,
River call'd *Ons* to convince them, it would be a great-
ther Lake about advantage for them to Trade with
om which come *French* than with the *English* or the
n falls into *troquois*.

this Lake m. However, as he observed that this
munication bation was inconstant, and easily im-
Gulph of *Mexico* sed upon, he thought fit to build a
Map. fort for his Security, and to make there
ved in that Ba kind of Magazine for the execution of
, and sent baits further Deligus, which was accord-
urs, to *Niagangly* done with all convenient speed,
Canoos with M. la Salle having chosen an advantagi-
ollect, to gobus Situation at the Mouth of the Ri-

The

The impatience I had to re-join M. la Salle with the fifteen Men I had brought back to their Duty, obliged me to make all the haste possible, but the want of Provisions, and the contrary Winds obliged us to land within Thirty Leagues of our Fort, where we found Acorns and some Staggs, wherewith we refreshed our selves. My Men were so harassed, that I could never perswade them to imbark again the same day, which obliged me to imbark alone with our Pilots, promising them to return speedily. The Weather being very stormy, we spent six days before we could reach the Fort *Miamis*, where I gave an Account to M. la Salle of my Discoveries. He received me very kindly, but told me withal, that he had been better pleased to see me arrived with all his Men.

These last words seem'd to me a Command, and therefore after having refreshed my self, I went again into my Canoo, but I was hardly Fifteen Leagues off, that I was met by a violent Storm, in which our Canoo was overturned and then set to rights again, and at last driven upon the shore, from whence we went over Land to meet

out

re-join M. Men at the place appointed. We
 Men I had arrived there the next Morning, and
 obliged me having spent the rest of the Day to get
 le, but the them together, embarked again, and
 e contrary came in less than one day to Fort
 thin Thirty *Miamis*.

we found M. la Salle was very glad to see his
 wherewith Men together, looking upon this Re-
 Men were suit as a necessary Supply to carry on
 r perswade his Designs, and yet these very Men
 same day, disappointed them, and some time after
 alone with out an end to his Discoveries, and to his
 to return life, so that the Men alone, upon whom
 being very grounded his hopes, were the only
 before we cause of all the Misfortunes that befell
 , where I him, and of the Tragical end of his Life.

alle of my M. la Salle having in less than two
 very kind- Months put his Fort in a good posture
 e had been of Defence, as well to protect his Barks,
 d with all and Canoos, as to defend himself against
 he Natives on the Land side, and in-
 gaged the chief of the Nation into his
 interests, resolved to advance as far as
 he *Illinois*, whose nearest Habitation
 was above 100 Leagues from our Fort.

The only way to go to them, was to
 embark upon a River, which springing
 from a Hill within six Leagues of the
 Lake of the *Illinois*, becomes Navigable
 above Forty Leagues from our Fort, and
 falls

*River of the
 Illinois.*

M. De La Salle.

falls into the *Mississipi*, after a course
 200 Leagues. We left our Fort, and
 the Country of the *Miamis* in the begin-
 ing of *December*, leaving only ten Men
 to secure our Magazines; and having
 carried our Canoos and Equipage over
 Land, arrived four days after upon the
 River of the *Illinois*, where we Embarked
 to the number of Forty four Persons
 without reckoning Three *Recollets*.
 We fell down the said River, by several
 Journeys, the better to observe the
 Countrey, and supply our selves with
 Provisions. The Banks of that River
 are as charming to the Eye, as useful for
 Life. The Meadows, Fruit-Trees, and
 Forests, affording every thing that is
 necessary for Men and Beasts, so that
 being amused by that agreeable variety
 we spent six days from the *Portage* (that
 is the place where we Embarked)
 the first Village of the *Illinois*, called
Pontdalaria, consisting of above 50
 Cabins, where we found no Inhabitants.
 We went ashore, and viewed their Cab-
 ins or Cottages, which are made with
 great pieces of Timber, interlac'd with
 Branches, and cover'd with Bark. The
 inside is more neat, the Walls or sides
 as well as the Floor, being finely mat-
 tered.

A Village of
 the Illinois

Even

after a course
 ft our Fort, and
 mis in the begi
 g only ten Ma
 es; and havin
 Equipage ov
 s after upon th
 ere we Embark
 ty four Person
 three *Recolle*
 River, by ea
 o observe th
 ur selves wi
 of that Riv
 ye, as useful
 uit-Trees, an
 thing that
 Beasts, so th
 eeable variet
 e *Portage* (th
 Embarked)
Illinois, call
 of above 50
 no Inhabitan
 ved their Ca
 are made wi
 nterlac'd wi
 th Bark. Th
 Walls or sid
 finely matt
 Eve

very Cottage has two Apartments,
 herein several Families might lodge,
 and under every one of them there is a
 Cave or Vault, wherein they preserve
 their *Indian-Corn*, of which we took a
 sufficient quantity, because we wanted
 provisions.

We continued our Voyage, and above
 thirty Leagues lower fell into a Lake
 Pond above seven Leagues in Circuit,
 here we caught excellent Fish; and
 following the stream, fell again into the
 channel of the River, and found our
 selves between two Bodies of Savages,
 who were Encamped on both sides the
 River. They had no sooner discovered

but they run to their Arms, and put
 themselves in order of Battel, after ha-
 ving sent their Wives and Children into
 the Woods. We put our selves like-
 wise in good posture, and brought our
 Canoos upon a Line, and advanced to-
 wards the Shore in that order. The *Il-*
linois observing our Countenance, and
 being naturally inclin'd to Peace, con-
 tented themselves to ask us, who we
 were? We answered by our Interpre-
 ter that we were Subjects to the King of
 France, and come to make them know
 the Master of Heaven and Earth, and
 offer

*The Illi-
 nois put
 themselves
 in order of
 Battel.*

offer them the Protection of our great
 Monarch; adding, that if they would
 put themselves under his Protection,
 they should live happily, and free from
 the Insults of their Enemies. We told
 them besides, that though their Country
 was plentiful, they wanted Industry
 to enjoy the Advantages of it, we
 therefore offer'd them our own, pro-
 vided they would have Commerce with
 us. The *Illinois* having heard our
 Answer and Proposals, received us not
 as Savages use to do, but as Men
 bred and civiliz'd. They express'd
 much as they could, their Veneration
 for our King; they presented us with
 a *Calumet*, the Signal or Badge of Peace
 among all those Nations, as it has been
 already observed. They use the
 Ceremony of *Singing* or *Dancing* the *Calumet*.
 When they sing it, they drive a Pole into
 the Ground, and every one brings in
 to the place what he hath taken from the
 Enemy, of which they make a kind of
 Trophay, and sing about it their
 Warlike Expeditions and glorious Feats.
 They call *Dancing* the *Calumet*, when
 they Dance about that Trophay after
 the Singing is over.

*They accept
 our Propo-
 sals.*

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

We answer'd their Ceremonies and Complements by all the demonstrations of Joy we could think on, and some presents as tokens of our Friendship. We told them, that Necessity had forc'd us to take some *Indian* Corn out of their Village, for which we gave them some Toys and Brandy. This Convinc'd them of our Sincerity, and sending for their Wives and Children, made preparations to entertain us with all the Solemnity and Magnificence they are capable of, with Beef and Stag, and all sorts of Venison and Fowls. We were very liberal on our side of our Brandy, so that the Feast lasted three whole days; during which, we made several Discharges of our Arms, at which they were delighted, but our good Words and kind expressions confirmed them in the good opinion they had of us. The familiar titles of Brothers, Friends, and Comrades were not forgotten; and even some of us were Adopted into the chief families amongst them; so that through the natural Inconstancy of the *Americans*, we discover'd in the *Illinois*, a great Humanity, and a good disposition to Civil Society.

They entertain us.

They

Character
of the Illi-
nois.

They are naturally Caressing, Flatterers, and Complaisant, but on the other side Cunning, and dexterous at all Exercises. They are generally speaking well shaped, strong, and of a brown or tawny Complexion. Hunting is their great Delight, which makes them indocible. They love Women with excess, and Boys above Women, so that they become by that horrid Vice, very effeminate. 'Tis observable however that notwithstanding that vicious Inclination, they have several Laws to punish that infamous Vice. For as soon as a Boy has prostituted himself, he is degraded in a manner of his Sex, being forbidden to wear the Apparel or Name of Man, and to make any Office or Function fit for Men, even nor so much as to be suffered to go a Hunting. They are therefore look'd upon as Women and confin'd to their Employments, whom they are even more slighted and hated than by Men; insomuch that these Wretches become, by their Crime the scorn and contempt of both Sexes. Thus without any help, but natural Reason, they are sensible of their Crime and have made these Laws as a Bridle to master their brutish sensuality, tho

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

arefing, Flatter'd Embassador arriv'd in the Camp of
 but on the other the *Illinois* during the Night, and ha-
 erous at all Ex-ving gain'd the chief of them, the Coun-
 erally speak- cil was called, where *Mausolea* having
 d of a brow displayed his Presents, acquainted the
 Hunting is their Assembly with the motives of his Em-
 makes them in bassie. He told them that it was not
 omen with ex the Interest alone of his Nation and
 omen, so that theirs, but rather of all the *Americans*, ^{His Dis-}
 rid Vice, ver which had occasion'd his Deputation, ^{course.}
 able however seeing that they were informed that the
 at vitious Incl *French* were come with a Design to sub-
 al Laws to pu due the whole Country of the North-
 For as soon *America* to the Gulph of *Mexico*;
 himself, he that to succeed therein, we pretended
 his Sex, being not only to make use of our own Forces,
 parel or Nam but likewise of the *Americans* themselves;
 any Office that in order thereunto, we had con-
 en nor so much tracted a strict Alliance with the *Iro-*
 hunting. The *quois* their common Enemies: That the
 n as Women Fort we had erected on their River, was
 ployments, the beginning of our Tyranny, and a
 e slighted an place of Refuge 'till the arrival of our
 nsomuch the Confederates: That if they expected a-
 y their Crime ny longer, and gave us time to join to-
 of both Sexe gether, their Miseries should be past re-
 t natural Remedy, and therefore advis'd them to
 their Crime prevent us, and destroy us whilst it was
 vs as a Brid in their power.
 casualty, tho

The crafty
Contri-
vance of
the Illinois.

These Calumnies of *Mausolea* made as I
great impression on the credulous *Illinois* ner
and so much the more, because his Ac Wiv
cusation agreed exactly with what ou on i
own Men had told them. But doubt mon
less the Reader expects an Account are v
the Reason that put the *Boquois* upo lity c
this Villainous trick; and if we remem ty.
ber what has been already said of th amon
Character of that barbarous Nation, t'fect c
easie to discern, that they were atra tend
that the *Illinois* would grow too pow profiti
erful by their Commerce with us, an fine
be enabled by the use of Fire-arms, t while
make head against them, and therefor Group
they made use of this *Mausolea* to Ac Coun
cuse us as he did, in order to incen which
the *Illinois* against our Nation, and pre perfec
vent thereby our Settlement in th tains a
Country. we co

M. La Salle, who relied upon the M.
Faith of the late Reconciliation, knew streng
nothing of this new Storm; and having nothin
no other Thoughts than to settle his U them i
nion with the *Illinois*, rose very ear time t
ly, and went directly to the Camp of selves
the *Illinois* with his best Friend, when fore he
he was mightily surpriz'd to see a gene rising
ral Uproar, and that no body would was in
speak with him. The Conjunction wa Howe
ver

Mausolea made as I have said before, they hate all manner of restraint; they marry several Wives, and to preserve Peace and Union in their Families, they marry commonly Sisters or near Relations. They are very Jealous, and punish the Infidelity of their Wives with a great severity. *Hermaphrodites* are very common amongst them, but whether it be an effect of the Climate or no, I do not pretend to determine. Women, and the prostituted Boys I have spoken of, work fine Mats for hanging their Cottages, while Men go a Hunting or till the Ground for sowing of *Indian Corn*. Their Country is situated along the River, which bears their Name, and are dispersed in several Villages. This contains about 1500 Souls, amongst whom we computed 500 fighting Men.

M. La Salle being sensible of the strength of this Nation, thought that nothing was to be neglected to keep them in amity with us; but at the same time that it was necessary to provide ourselves against their Inconstancy. Therefore he ordered a Fort to be built upon a rising ground near the River, which was in a little time in a posture of defence. However he was in great pain for his

A Fort built.

Bark which he had sent back from the Bay of *Puans* to *Niagara*, of which he had no manner of News. This, together with the malice of some of our Men made him so melancholy, that the sadness of his Face betrayed the grief of his Heart; but as he was very Courageous, he conceal'd it as well as possible, contenting himself to manifest it by the Name of *Crevecœur* (breaking Heart) which he gave to his Fort.

We had however hitherto no great cause of Complaint; we had happily carried on our Discovery to 500 Leagues beyond Fort *Frontenac*, and made several Forts for the Communication and Security of our Settlements. Most of the Savages were entred into our Alliance, and the fiercest among them, had not so much as offer'd to stop our Progress, so that we found no Enemies but our selves, and our own Divisions which proved at last a fatal source of great Misfortunes and Miseries.

Murmurings of the French.

Most of our Men being discouraged by a long and tedious Voyage, weary of a wandring Life in Forests and Desarts, where they had no other Company but Brutes, and Savages, with

out

back from the out any Guide, Carriage, and Provisi-
of which he had ons could not forbear murmuring a-
This, together gainst the Author of so tiresome and
ne of our Menperillous an Enterprife. M. La Salle,
y, that the Pale whose penetration was extraordinary,
l the grief of his discover'd immediately their dissatisfa-
ery Couragious tion, and try'd all possible means to
s possible, con-revent the consequences thereof. The
ifest it by the lory of the Enterprife, the exemple of
reaking Heart he Spaniards, the hopes of a great Boo-
rt. y, and every thing else that may en-
herto no great age Men, we made use of to incou-
re had happily age them, and inspire them with better
to 500 Leagues entiments; but these Exhortations, like
nd made seve il poured upon Fire, served only to
unication and crease their dissatisfaction. What said
ents. Most obey? must we always be Slaves to his
into our Allieprichio's, and be continually bubb'd
ong them, had his Visions, and foolish Expectati-
stop our Pro us? and must the Fatigues we have
o Enemies but therto undergone be used as an Argu-
vn Divisions ment to oblige us to go through more
atal source of erils, to gratifie the Ambition or Folly
iferies. a merciless Man, who upon fair pre-
g discouraged nces has transplanted us into this new
Voyage, the World amongst Brutes. We are very
not see, and r from our Country, without Provi-
ife in Forests ons or any other help; but our case
had no other all be ten times worse, if we follow
savages, with e wandring Inclinations of a Man,
out D 2 who

who is resolved to go to the further end of the World. He has made himself Rich by our Perils, and to our own loss. What then have we to do, but to put a stop, by his Death, to our further Miseries, and take possession of what he has gained by our Fatigues? These were the Arguments these Villains used to incourage themselves to the horrid Crime they had resolved upon; but having upon second thoughts, considered the consequences of their violent Design, they thought it would be more safe to incite the *Illinois* against him, that he might perish by their Hands.

The Artifices of the Malecontents.

To compass that villainous Design they made a shew of an extraordinary Friendship to the Savages, and let them know, that by reason of the good Entertainment they had received from them, they thought themselves obliged to acquaint them with the dangers they were threatned with. They told them that *M. La Salle* was in a strict Alliance with the *Iroquois*, their ancient and implacable Enemies; that he was advanced into their Country to discover their Situation and Strength; that the Fort he had built was to bridle them, and that the Voyage he pretended to

make

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

37

to the further en
as made himse
l to our own lo
do, but to put
our further M
ion of what h
ues? These we
lains used to i
he horric Crim
; but having
considered th
violent Desig
be more safe
him, that h
lands.
lainous Desig
n extraordin
s, and let the
f the good E
received fro
nselfes oblig
e dangers the
They told the
a strict All
eir ancient an
at he was ac
ry to discov
gh; that th
bridle them
pretended
mal

ake to Fort *Frontenac*, was in order to
quaint the *Iroquois* with their Conditio-
n, and conduct them into their Coun-
y, to destroy altogether their Nation,
aving agreed together to share the
ooty amongst them; concluding, that
aving revealed to them the wicked De-
ns of their Commander, they left it
their own prudence, to take what
easures they should think necessary for
eir Security.

Tis very easie to guess what impres-
on such a Discovery wrought upon a
Weak and Credulous People, who be-
eved without any further Inquiry,
whatever our Villains had told them.
They broke off immediately their Socie-
with us, and lookt upon us, but chiefly
on our Chief, as their greatest Ene-
ies, and resolv'd upon our Ruin. M.
Salle suspected the cause of their
istrust, and was sensible of the dan-
er he was expos'd to, but did not
now from whence it came. His great
ourage was not however cast down,
d trusting to his good Conscience,
ent boldly to the Chief of the Sava-
s, and told them, That he observ'd
ch an alteration in their proceedings
ith him, that he could not but be con-
cerned

cerned at it; and therefore desir'd them to tell him the Motives of their Mistrust, and to consider whether they were well ground'd, or only an Artifice of their common Enemies, who were jealous of the good Correspondence that was between them.

And how they were discovered. The *Illinois* could not refuse that reasonable Demand, and therefore told him, that his own Men had discover'd his Designs against them, in conjunction with the *Iroquois*. M. La Salle, surpriz'd at the Perfidiousness and Treachery of his Men, made use of such convincing Arguments, to prove the Folly of his Accusers and his Innocence together with the impossibility of the League with a Cruel Nation, who were bound by no Law nor Sense of Humanity; that the *Illinois* were perswaded of the sincerity of his Intentions, and that the Motive of his Enemies, and therefore we became Friends again.

The arrival of Mausolea. The Calm was hardly settled, but that was disturb'd by a more dangerous storm than the former, by the arrival of one *Mausolea*, a secret Emissary of the *Iroquois*, of the neighbouring Nation of the *Mascontans*, a Cunning Seditious and Eloquent Man. This preter-

fore desir'd them therefore exhorted to weigh every
 es of their Ming, and enquire into the Embassie,
 whether they suspected *Mausolea* was sent by the
 or only an *Aroquois*, and not by his own Nation;
 Enemies, warning them, in the mean time, that
 good Correspondence was come to protect them against the
 on them. *Iroquois* and their other Enemies.

refuse that re These Reasons being accompanied
 therefore with the assuredness which a good
 had discovered cause inspires, had all the expected ef-
 in, in conjunct; infomuch that *Mausolea* himself,
M. La Salle, that of Fear, or remorse of Conscience,
 fness and Treasoness'd, that the *Iroquois* had spread
 use of such calouse Reports among the *Mascoutans*, on
 prove the purpose to excite a general Insurrection
 his Innocence against us, and owned that the safety of
 possibility of the *Illinois*, and of his own Nation, de-
 Nation, who depended on their Union with us; where-
 ense of Honour upon the *Illinois* made us all the Pro-
 ere perswadedestations in the World, that they would
 entions, and never renounce our Alliance, nor give
 es, and therefore any more to the Suggestions of our
 again. common Enemies.

*The effect
 of his Dis-
 course.*

bled, but that This Peace and good Correspondence
 ore dangerous being thus happily restor'd, *M. la Salle*
 by the arriv turn'd all his Thoughts towards his
 Emiffary Enterprize, and finding himself near the
 bouring Nation great River *Mississipi*, he resolv'd to di-
 viding his Men to carry on at once his
 This preter Discoveries to the *North* and to the
 South,

*M. la Sal-
 le divides
 his Men.*

South, by means of that River, referring for himself to fall down to the Sea and to send some body else toward the source of the River. But as he was thus preparing himself, his Treacherous Men plotted to put a stop both to his Journey and to his Life, and to poison him and his best Friends at once. They pitched upon *Christmas-day* for acting this Villainy, and found means to put some Poison into the Pot, to cut off at one blow, all such as might have averged the Death of their Captain, and likewise to remain the sole Masters of the Fort, and of all the Effects that were therein.

*M. la Salle
Poisoned by
his Men.*

The Dinner was hardly over, that *M. la Salle* and his Friends found themselves very ill. They fell into Convulsions and other Symptoms, which discover'd the true cause of them; whereupon they took a Dose of good Treacle, and by this quick remedy prevented the effect of the Poison, in so much that all recover'd.

*They run
away.*

This was too plain to be denyed, and too horrid to be forgiven, therefore the Rogues ran away to avoid the just punishment they deserv'd; and tho' *M. la Salle* sent after them, it was not possible

at River, referable to overtake them, the thick Forests
 down to the Sea, forcing them a fair opportunity to
 else toward the Lake their escape. The desertion of
 But as he was these Villains weaken'd our Band, but
 his Treachery were soon recruited by several
 stop both to young Savages, who engag'd them-
 e, and to poison selves into our Service, and likewise
 ls at once. The some French Men who were dis-
 s-day for acting ers'd and wandering in the Woods,
 d means to put that our number was in a little time
 ot, to cut off considerably increased.

Things being thus settl'd, M. la Salle

ply'd himself to the execution of his Mr. Dacan
 appointed
 for the dis-
 covery so
 the North:

sole Masters of the Discovery of the Country along the

Mississipi, to the North-east, with four

French Men, two Savages, and Father

ouis a Recollect. He gave 'em Arms,

ammunition, and some Merchandise

trade with the Nations. They Em-

arked on the 28th of February 1680,

and fell down the River of the Illinois

to the Mississipi, and from thence went

that great River for 450 Leagues

together to the North, and came with-

seven Leagues of its Source, landing

now and then on both sides to view the

Country, and by what Nation it was

inhabited.

The

The source
of the Mis-
sissippi.

The *Mississippi* springs out of a Fountain on the top of a Hill in the Country of the *Iffati*, about the 50th degree of Latitude: It receives so many Rivulets that it becomes Navigable for Boat within six Leagues from its Source. The Country along its Banks is Inhabited by several Nations, as the *Hanetons*, *Iffati's*, *Oua*, *Tintonha*, and *Nadouestian* Men who received Mr. *Dacan* with all the kindness imaginable. He traded with them, and increased his number with several Savages, who offered to accompany him. He set up likewise the Kingdoms about two Leagues from the source of the River, upon a great Treaty in sight of those Nations, as a Mark that they became Subjects to his Majesty. He made also several Settlements, and one, among the rest, among the *Iffati's* where some *French* Men desired to remain.

M. Dacan
takes possession
of that Country.

This Gentleman, charmed with the docility of these Nations, and engaged by the advantageous Trade that he had with there, advanced to the Lake of the *Arjenipoits*, which is about Thirty Leagues in Circuit. That Nation received our Men kindly, notwithstanding their natural fierceness, and therefore to

four

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

... out of a Founde...
... in the Count... among the *Chongaskabees*, or Na...
... 50 ... of *Strong Men*, who are Neigh...
... many Rivoleurs of the *Arsenipoits*.

... While Mr. *Dacan* was carrying on
... Discoveries, M. *la Salle* took his
... is Inhabite of the *Illinois*, to return to Fort
... the *Hanetons*, *ontenac*, in order to get a new supply
... and *Nadouestis* Men and Ammunition, and likewise
... *Dacan* with all view in what condition were his
... He traded werts, Magazines and Settlements, and
... his number witen the building of a new Ship,
... offered to accom... he had order'd to be made. He
... likewise the King out the 8th of *November*, 1680, and
... agues from three days after arrived to the Village
... upon a great T... the *illinois*, where he resolved to
... ons, as a Ma... another Fort on a rising ground,
... ects to his M... order to command the *Miamis*, *Ou-*
... eral Settlements, *amis*, *Kikapous*, *Aisnous*, and *Mascou-*
... t, among the...; and to serve likewise for a Place
... ch Men des... Refuge to the *French*. This Design,
... of prudent and advantagious, was
... armed with... ever attended with some fatal Con-
... s, and engagences, as we shall see hereafter.

M. la Sal-
le takes
leave of the
Illinois.

... Having taken all the observations that
... to the Lake... thought necessary; he continued his
... is about Thi... arney, and met, about two Leagues
... hat Nation... on the Village of the *Illinois*, two of
... notwithstanding... Men, whom he had sent two Months
... ness, and th... to *Missilimachinac*, to endeavour
... four...
... to

A Treache-
ry of two of
his Men.

to get Intelligence of his new Settlement. These Rogues pretended to have done their utmost, without having been able to Discover what was become of the Fort, tho' they had burnt it themselves, and having sold the Effects that were on board to the *Iroquois*. M. la Salle suspected presently that it was lost, but however, appeared as unconcern'd as before, and sent me in a Letter a Draught of the Fort he had marked out, ordering me to work thereupon immediately. These Villains, who had already sent us to the *Iroquois*, made a great use in order to improve the absence of our Commander to their advantage, and deliver'd me the Letter of M. la Salle, which being very pressing, I went immediately to the place I was commanded to, exhorting my Men to Peace and Unity, and leaving the Fort under the Command of the most Faithful. The place M. la Salle had pitched upon, was a Rock very high, the top of which was even and of a convenient space, so that it commanded the River, and the Country round about. I had already drawn some Lines, and made other preparations to build it, when I heard that the Villains had seduc'd and perverted me

Our Fort
Plunder'd.

a Salle.

M. De La Salle.

of his new Shy nice, and therefore M. la Salle was
 ded to have do great perplexity, and did not know
 t having been a at to do. Some were of Opinion to re-
 s become of h into the Fort 'till this new Treachery
 themselves, als discover'd, but he would not hear-
 ts that were to this Advice, lest his Retreat
 M. la Salle suspe ould confirm the Accusation of his E-
 as lost, but homies; and took a Resolution more
 ncern'd as befo thy of himself, tho' more dange-
 ter a Draughts. He went up boldly to the Assem-
 ed out, order of the Chief of the Nation, and ex-
 immediately. fted himself as well as he could in
 had already for own Language, and much to this
 e a great habet.

e absence of o
 vantage, and o Friends,

M. la Salle, whi Cannot but wonder at your Inconstancy; Mr. la Sal-
 vent immedi we parted very good Friends last Night, le's speech
 commanded this Morning I find you almost in Arms to the Illi-
 ce and Unio nst me; no body speaks to me, and every nois.
 nder the Co threatens me: What new Crime have
 hful. The pla mitted? or rather by what new Impo-
 d upon, was have you been incensed against me? I
 p of which w ender my self, and therefore if ever I
 t space, so the acted against the Interest of your Na-
 , and the Cou, you may do what you please, I am at
 l already dra mercy. The Savages considering
 other prepara Speech, and his Countenance, were
 heard that the oft perswaded with his Innocence,
 perverted m told him the Subject of the Em-
 bassie

bassie of *Mausolea*, who was at that present, whereupon M. la Salle delivered his Speech to him in this manner: *You accuse me of an Alliance with a barbarous and Treacherous Nation, but are your Proofs? If you have any? If you have none, do you think the Illinois will believe your malicious Contrivances.*

Mausolea had certainly no Proof, endeavoured to make out his Accusation by some Circumstances; as his former Commerce with the *Iroquois*; the Fort he had built upon the River of the *Illinois*; and his return to Fort *Frontenac*, concluding that though these were not direct Proofs, yet they were substantial Indications of his Design. It was very easie for M. la Salle to answer these Arguments, and to shew that the *Iroquois*, being jealous of their good Correspondence, and sensible that their Union would enable them to make head against them; had hir'd this Emissary to create these Divisions. He advised them to consider every thing, and how the *Iroquois* had subdued, by their Artifices, the *Miamis*, the *Quiaquons*, and the *Mattawontans*, who sent this pretended Advise

La Salle.

Who was at that

M. la Salle did

him in this manner

Alliance with a

Nation, but

you have any?

none, do you

believe your malice

only no Proof,

out his Accusations;

as his former

Illinois; the

the River of the

to Fort Frontenac

though these were

they were substantiated

Design. It

La Salle to answer

new that the

their good Conduct

that their Unbelief

make head against

Commissary to create

advised them

and how the

their Artifices

and the *Majesty*

pretended Advantages

M. De La Salle.

49

of our men, insomuch that they had plundered our Fort, and carried away what was most valuable in it. I returned immediately, and found only seven or eight *French* Men in the Fort, who had been so honest as to detest the Villany of their Comrades, but not able to prevent it. I confess my Heart was almost broke, when I consider'd the Condition we were in, without any help amongst Savages; but having found a good quantity of Ammunition, with Arms left in the Fort, I thought the Cause was not altogether Desperate, and encouraged my Men, by the hopes of a quick return of *M. La Salle*, and all other Arguments that I could think on, not forgetting the glory they had gained by their Fidelity, and the Reward they might expect, if they supported his Disgrace with Courage. I took an exact Account of the Damage we had sustained, and sent it to *M. La Salle*. I redoubled in the mean time my care and application to preserve our Correspondence with the *Illinois*, and by these means we put our selves very near in as good a posture as before, the number of Men excepted.

M. La Salle having received these

E

dismal

what
 dismal Tidings, made a great search *among*,
 ter those Rogues, and pursued them the C
 closely, that part of them surrendre our
 themselves, and the rest were taking
 He caused the most Seditious to be wou
 Hang'd, and pardon'd the rest. He; bu
 sent the Messenger back to me, with th
 a promise of a quick Supply, and On Wom
 ders to tarry for him in the Fort. themf
 whole Year however elapsed in th His
 expectation, but our number being increas
 creased, by the arrival of some *Frenche* th
 Men, and the conjunction of some Savane of
 ges, we would have wanted nothing, an
 at all, had not a sad and unforeseen.
 Accident disappointed our Measures. The

The Iro-
 quois come
 to attack
 the Illi-
 nois.

Our loss was hardly repaired, when to tv
 we fell into a greater danger; for in the *gance*
 Month of *September* 1687, we discover'd Ag
 red, within a quarter of a League (yo ex)
 the Camp of the *Illinois*, about *60* *Illinois*
Iroquois armed with Bows, Swords, Haft upv
 berds, and a great many of them withem, c
 Fire-arms. This unexpected Armourage
 frightened the *Illinois*, and revived theep the
 suspicion of our Correspondence wintard
 their Enemies; and I must confess, eter,
 was in a great perplexity, knowing not adv
 what to do in so nice a juncture. Howest W
 ever having determin'd my self, I d
 whatever

alle. whatever I could to encourage the *Illinois*,
 a great search and told them that I would go to
 pursued them the Camp of the *Iroquois*, and endeavor
 them surrender to bring them to Terms; assured
 them were taking them, that if I could not succeed,
 Seditious to be would share the danger they were
 and the rest. He; but that they had no time to lose,
 I took to me, would therefore advis'd them to send their
 supply, and their Women and Children away, and put
 in the Fort. themselves in good posture of defence.
 elapsed in this Proposal convinc'd them of the
 number being in sincerity of our Intentions, and there-
 fore of some *Frenche* they gave me an Interpreter, and
 one of some *Savane* of their chief Men to accompany
 me, wanted nothing, and be Witnesses of my Negotia-
 tion and unforeseen.

our Measures. The Army of the *Iroquois* divided
 into two Bodies, and commanded by
 an Englishman; for in the *gancourte*, Chief of *Tsonnontouans*,
 we discovered *Agoustot* Chief of the *Desouatages*,
 of a League two experienc'd Generals. That of the
Illinois, about 600 was not 500 strong, and we were
 furnished with Swords, Hats upward of 25 *French* Men amongst
 many of them withem, divided in their Battalions, to im-
 proved their Armourage them by our Example, and
 revived them in the best order we could. I
 sent a detachment from our Army with my Inter-
 preter, a *French* Man, an *Illinois*, and two *French* Men,
 knowing and advanced toward the *Iroquois*, whole
 juncture. The Wing moved, at the same time, to-
 ward myself, I did

whatever

ward our Right, where our Men appeared very resolute, and prepar'd to make a vigorous Defence.

*A Custom
observ'd a-
mongst the
Savages.*

As soon as I came near them, they shot at us, but by chance none was wounded, whereupon I sent back the *Illinois*, and the two *French-men*, taking upon my self all the peril attending such a Deputation. As soon as I came at a convenient distance, I shewed a Collar it being the Custom amongst the *Savages*, to make all their Proposals with Collars, the same being the Symbol of Peace, Union, and Alliance. I advanced upon the publick Faith of their Badge, but I was no sooner in the Camp but I was seized by those Villains, one of whom took my Collar, whilst another design'd to stab me with a Knife, but it pleas'd God, that the Knife slid along one of my Ribs, which saved my Life. The most Rational, or rather the least Brutish of 'em, rescued me from their Hands, and after having stopt the Blood with a kind of Balsom, conducted me to the middle of their Camp with my Interpreter; where they asked me the Subject of my coming.

The
Coura
was I
Threat
of thei
of
their co
Sav
attac
deracy
King
I int
they had
and that
one
united
th
I
ght to
terpris
dred
; and
tation
Fea
g, that
with
King,
Tho
ther; an
the los
as to fu

lle.

our Men ap-
d prepar'd to

r them, they
ce none was

sent back the
b-men, taking

ttending such
s I came at a

wed a Collar
ngst the Sa

roposals with
ne Symbol o

ce. I advan-
Faith of the

in the Camp
Villains, one

whilst ano-
with a Knife

he Knife sl-
which saved

nal, or rather
ued me from

ng stopt the
m, conduct-

their Camp
ere they ask-

oming.

M. De La Salle.

Tho' my strength was considerably

abated by the loss of my Blood, my

Courage was not cast down, neither

was I daunted by their Number and

Threats. I complained therefore, first

of their unjust Proceedings, and viola-

tion of their Publick Faith; and then of

their coming, without any provocation,

against the Sa^d Nation, which was in Con-

deracy, and under the Protection of

the King of *France*, my Master; there-

fore I intreated them to return home, if

they had any respect for that Prince;

and that they would look upon the *Il-*

linois as their Friends, since they were

united with us, that whatsoever con-
spir'd our Destruction, conspir'd our
ruin. I told them besides, that they
ought to consider the danger of their
Enterprise; the *Illinois* being about six
hundred men, and the *French* above
two thousand; and that my Mediation and Ex-
hortation to Peace, were not the effects
of our Fear we had for them; conclu-
ding, that I intreated them to make
Peace with the *Illinois* in the Name of
the King, and of *Count Frontenack* their
Governour; and that I should not complain
of the loss of my Blood, if I was so hap-
py to succeed in my Negotiation.

My Depu-
tation to the
Iroquois.

The Success
of it.

While I was thus arguing, the two Armies were skirmishing; and some time after, an *Iroquois* came to give Advice to the General; that their Right Wing began to give ground, and that they had observed some *French* men among the *Illinois*, who had made a great fire upon them. This Advice came very unluckily for me; for the Savages were so incens'd against me, that they presently talk'd of killing me. I was preparing my self to suffer every thing, but observing a young rash *Iroquois* standing behind me with a Razor in his Hand, and knowing the Custom of that Cruel Nation, which is to cut off their Enemies Head, and then take off the Hair and Skin like a Cap, which is amongst them the greatest Trophy, I did not doubt but this young Warrior had a great fancy to my Hair, which he touch'd now and then, and lest he should do it too soon, I told him, that he ought, at least, to expect the Order of his Masters. *Tagancourte* would have me put to death, but *Agoufot* being particular Friend of M. La Salle, opposed the other General, and by a kind of Miracle, Mercy perhaps, for the first time, prevail'd with this Barbarous Na-

tion; and it was resolved to send me
back to the *Illinois*, and tell them they
were disposed to a sincere Peace and U-
nion, giving me a fine Collar of *Porce-
lain*, as a Token of their sincerity. They
protested that they would for the future,
live in Peace with the *Illinois*, and look
upon them as Brethren, since they were
Children of the Governour of *Canada*,
which they did not know before.

The consideration of the danger I
had escaped, Cured me almost of my
Wound, and gave me sufficient strength
to return to our Camp. I met about
half the Way, Father *Gabriel de la Ri-
ponde*, and Father *Zenoble Membré*, who
almost despaired of seeing me any more,
and therefore could hardly express the
Joy they had for my happy return. We
went together to the *Illinois*, to whom
I deliver'd the Message of the *Iroquois*,
but advis'd them withal not to trust
too much to their Words and Presents;
for I could not perswade my self, that
so Cruel and Ambitious a Nation
would return Home without any other
advantage, but that of having made
Peace with the *Illinois*, whom they
pretended to subdue; which was ra-
ther a dishonour, and therefore I lookt
upon

upon all their Proteftations as an Artifice to surprize their Enemies.

*The Refolu-
tion of the
Illinois,
upon my
return,
and their
Defertion.*

The *Illinois* were fully perfwad-
ed with what I told them, of the Infi-
delity of the *Iroquois*; and yet they
foiv'd to return the Prefent by an Em-
baffie. They called, in the mean time
a Council, to take the neceffary mea-
fures for their Defence; but their youn-
g Warriors being fatisfy'd with the Gl-
ry they had gained in the firft Attack
wherein they repulfd their Enemies
would not venture a fecond Fight, and
moft of them left their Camp. The
others being thus weakened by the
Defertion, ran away upon the approach
of the *Iroquois*, who plundered the
Camp.

Being thus forfaken by our new Con-
federates, we retir'd into our Fort, but
the *Illinois* being re-inforced by fresh
Men, appeared again two days after
upon a rifing ground in good Order
and refolved to fight; whereupon the
Iroquois thinking they were more nu-
merous than at firft, and having tryed
their Valour in the former Attack, de-
fir'd me to interpoze my mediation for
a Peace, which I accepted; and they
gave me one of their Chiefs as an Ho-
ftage.

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

ions as an Ar
enemies.
ully perswad
of the Infi
d yet they
sent by an En
the mean tim
necessary me
out their you
with the Gl
e first Attac
their Enemie
nd Fight, and
Camp. Th
ened by the
the approach
undered the
our new Con
our Fort, bu
ced by fresh
o days after
good Order
ereupon the
re more nu
having trye
Attack, de
mediation for
; and they
s as an Ho
stage.

stage. I went to the *Illinois* with Father
Zenoble, and told them the Proposals of
the *Iroquois*; and that I had brought one
of their Chiefs for Hostage. The *Illinois*
were very well pleased with my
Message, and assured me that they were
sincerely disposed to make Peace with
the *Iroquois*; then they gave me a full
Power to make it upon what Terms I
should please, and promis'd to send
immediately an Hostage for confirming
what I should say. Both Parties being
well disposed, I took some refresh-
ment, and returned to the *Iroquois*,
whom I told that I was empowered to
treat with them, and desir'd that we
might immediately enter upon the
Treaty.
They were pleased with it, and the
Hostage of the *Illinois* being arrived at
the same time, confirm'd every thing
that I had said, so that the Treaty
would have been concluded in few
Hours, had not the Imprudence of this
Illinois broken all my measures. This
inconsiderate Fellow began to praise the
Valour of his own Nation, and their
Generals; but owned, that being
hardly 400 Men, they lookt upon their
Proposals of Peace as a favour, which
they

Both Parties accept my mediation.

Imprudence of an Illinois.

they would acknowledge by some Presents of Beavers and Slaves. This foolish Confession undeceived the *Iroquois* who having believed what I had told them of the number of the *Illinois*, were glad to make Peace, and in some fear of their Enemies. They began then to speak very big, and complained in very hard words, I had deluded them and done them a great injury, saying that they would have got a considerable Booty, if they had not believed me.

I must confess I was put to a plunge but having recovered my self, I answer'd, That what I had said before and what the *Illinois* said then was true for the *Illinois* were above 600 Men upon their Arrival, and at the first fight but that a great number having deserted since that time, it may be that their Number was reduced to 400. I had no other intention but to bring both Parties to a right understanding that they were Masters of the Camp of their Enemies, and might impose upon them what Conditions they pleased, since they offer'd themselves to buy the Peace. They approved, or at least seemed to approve my Reasons, and

by some Pro-
 es. This foot
 ed the *Iroquois*
 at I had tol
 e them the next day in their Camp,
 e *Illinois*, we
 conclude the Treaty.

in some fea
 began then
 plained in ve
 eluded the
 njury, sayin
 or a confide
 not believe

They came accordingly the next
 morning, with a great quantity of Bea-
 vers Skins, and several Slaves, which
 they presented to the *Iroquois*, who re-
 ceiv'd them very kindly, and promis'd
 to restore them their Camp and Habi-
 tations, which they confirmed by some
 presents of three Collars of Porcelain
 and Furrs. The first Collar signifying
 that they begged Pardon of the Go-
 vernour of *Canada*, for having attacked
 a Nation who was under his Protection;
 the second signifying the same civility to
 M. La Salle; and by the Third, the *I-*
roquois swore an eternal Alliance with
 the *Illinois*. These Presents being mu-
 tually exchanged, both Parties retired.

Whilst these two Nations were gi-
 ving each other mutual Marks of a
 sincere reconciliation, I discover'd that
 the *Iroquois* were secretly making
 Canoes, to follow the *Illinois* along the
 River, and exterminate them; and being
 asked by one of the Chiefs of the *Illinois*,
 what I thought of their Reconciliation?
 I told him very frankly, that the Pro-
 mises

The interest
 between
 the Iro-
 quois.
 and the Il-
 linois.

The Treachery of the
 Iroquois.

M. De La Salle.

mises and words of that treacherous
 tion were not to be relyed upon; that
 I did not doubt but that the Can
 which they were getting ready w
 so much secrecy, were design'd again
 them; that therefore I advis'd them
 retire into another Country with the
 Families, and fortifie themselves in som
 advantagious Post, 'till the *Iroquois* we
 gone away. The *Illinois* approved of m
 Advice, and went back to his Nation
 and I retired into our Fort.

*The Iro-
 quois make
 Presents to
 the French.*

The *Iroquois* having consider'd how
 they had used me, thought fit to give
 us some satisfaction, and therefore on the
 10th of *September*, eight days after the
 arrival, they desir'd me and Father *Z*
noble to come to their Council, where
 being sat, they brought six Packs of
Bever-skins, and told me, that their
 Nation offer'd us those Presents, and
 desir'd us to give the two first Packs
 in their Name to Count *Frontenac* their
 Father, and assure him that they would
 trouble no more the *Illinois*, knowing
 they were his Children; that they
 gave me the third to serve me as a
 Plaister for my Wound; that the fourth
 was Oil to rub our Legs during our Voy-
 age. By the fifth, they exhorted us to

Worship

Salle.

at treacherous
ved upon; th
that the Cano
ing ready w
designed again
advis'd them
ntry with the
mselves in for
he *Iroquois* we
pproved of m
to his Nation
ort.

onsider'd ho
ht fit to giv
erefore on th
ays after the
nd Father Z
ouncil, where
six Packs o
, that their
resents, and
o first Packs
rontenac their
they would
is, knowing
that they
ve me as a
t the fourth
g our Voy-
orted us to
Worship

orship the Sun; and by the last, they
quired us to march away the next
and retire to our *French Habita-*

returned them our thanks, in the *Their An-*
me of our Nation, for the respects *siver.*
had expressed for the Count *de*
atenac, and Mr. *la Salle*, and for
r good Entertainment, and like-
for their Oil and Plaister, but I
ught fit to ask them when they
mselves designed to march away,
when they would restore that
mp to the *Illinois*, according to their
mise. This Question did not please
m, and after a general grumbling,
y told me, that since I was so curi-
they would satisfie me, and that
would depart, after having de-
d some of our Brethren, or else
ne of the *Illinois*. As soon as I un-
stood this Answer, I thrust back
ar Present with my Foot, and told
m, that seeing they had such a De-
I would accept none, adding with-
that I would march away without
ar Order or Leave, when I should
nk fit. The Chiefs of the *Iroquois*
ing heard my reply, stood up, and
d us that we might retire. There
was

was amongst them one *Abenaguis*, whom I had been acquainted, who told me, that they were very much acquainted with me, and advis'd us to retire with all the haste we could to our Fort, which we did accordingly, and spent all the Night long upon our Guard, being resolv'd to defend our selves to the utmost extremity.

When we saw our selves safe, *Father Zenoble* and I made several Reflections on the Dissimulation and Infidelity of that Nation, and likewise on the danger we had been expos'd to in their Council; and I remember that that good Father blam'd my proceedings; and said, That in those nice occasions, we ought to be more pliant, in hopes to find a more favourable opportunity. I agreed with him in general, but insisted, that this Principle admitted of few exceptions, and that assuredness and courage were more prevailing upon barbarous men, than a more prudent walk. In the mean time we advis'd what was fit to be done in this juncture; and being unable to defend us against so many Enemies, we resolv'd to quit the Fort the next day. I Embarked the next Morning with two *Recollects* and

*The French
quit the
Fort.*

Fr.

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

e Abenaguis, who
aintained, who
ery much an
us to retire
ld to our F
ingly, and fr
pon our Gua
nd our selves
elves safe, Fat
eral Reflectio
nd Infidelity
e on the dang
o in their Co
hat that go
ceedings; a
occasions,
nt, in hopes
opportunity.
eral, but inf
mitted of fo
redness and
ling upon b
prudent w
vised what v
cture; and
against so
ed to quit
arked the m
llects and f
Fr

rench men; the others who were in
the Fort, having chosen to go and live
among the *Illinois* rather than to return
ome.
Having equally divided our Arms,
ammunition, and Goods, we Embark-
ed the Eleventh of *September*, 1687, ve-
early, and about Five Leagues
from the Fort, we went ashore to re-
trieve our Canoo, and dry some Furs,
which the Water would have spoiled.
As we were busie about it, Father
Gabriel told me that he would take
a walk along the Shore; and I ad-
vised him to keep in our sight, be-
cause we were surrounded with E-
nemies; but the charming Prospect of
that Country engaged him a little too
far, so that seeing he did not return,
we began to mistrust that he was fal-
len into the Hands of the Savages. Fa-
ther *Zenoble* and I advanced into the
Woods to look for him, but could not
discover what was become of him, not-
withstanding we fir'd our Arms, and
made all the Night long a great Fire
to give him notice of the place where
we expected him. We understood
hence, that he was met by a Band of
Savages called *Quicapous*, who murder-
ed

Father Ga-
briel mur-
dered by
the Sava-
ges.

ed him, and sold, some time after, Breviary to a Jesuit, from whom I learned these particulars. Thus dyed this Holy Man, in the seventieth Year of his Age, by the Hands of those wretched Men for the sake of whom he had left his Native Country, and suffer'd many Fatigues.

We waited for him 'till the next day about Noon, but having no hope of his Return, we Embarked again, and after one Months Navigation, landed within two days Journey of the Lake of the *Illinois*, into which we carried over Land our Equipage. We embarked again on the 20th of *October*, and ten days after, were forced to land, by contrary Winds, within 20 Leagues of a great Village, called *Potavalamine*, where we found no other Provision but Acorns.

I was sick of an Ague, and my legs were so swoln, that we could not reach the Village I have spoken of 'till the 10th of *November*. We found no body in it, nor any Provisions, but having, by good chance, advanced into the Country, we met with a good quantity of *Indian Corn*, which enabled us to Imbark again. The Winds were so cross

time after, that we were oblig'd to come a Shore
 from whom few days after, where having found
 s. Thus dy some fresh foot-steps, we followed the
 twentieth Year Track, and came to another Village of
 s of those ve the *Pontoualamis*, which was likewise
 om he had l abandoned, but however afforded us
 nd suffer'd some Provisions, which were sufficient
 to maintain us 'till our arrival at the
 Bay of *Puans*, which was towards the
 latter end of *November*.

'till the ne Having already described this Bay,
 aving no hop need not repeat it now, but I must
 barked again add, that there is a Creek in it called
 vigation, lan the Creek of the Sturgeons, because of
 ourney of th the prodigious quantity of that sort of
 which we ca Fish that is catch'd in it. We refresh-
 ge. We en ed our selves in that place for several
 of *October*, an days with the *Pontoualamis*, who en-
 ed to land, b tained us with scorched Beef and
 20 Leagues Stagg. We diverted also our selves in
Potavalami Hunting of Beavers, which afforded
 er Provision us a great satisfaction.

and my leg The Country about the Bay, being
 uld not reac watered by an infinite number of Ri-
 n of 'till th vulets, lined with great Trees, and the
 und no bod Woods being full of Aspen-trees,
 ut having, b the Branches and Leaves whereof are
 to the Coun the dainty food of Beavers. Those
 quantity of Creatures are very numerous in those
 ed us to Im Parts.

were so crof
 tha

*An Account
of
Beavers.*

The Beavers are, as every body knows, Amphibious Creatures, who cannot live without Air, Water, and Land. They are near as big as Sheep, but not so tall, their legs being very short, but so nimble, that they come nothing short of Apes for dexterity. They have a Muzzle or Nose, and strong Teeth; their Body is covered with thick Hair, and pretty fine, and their Tail is made up of a kind of twisted Hair, which forms a figure like that of a Triangle, and serves them as a Trowel to beat the soft Earth they make use of to build their Habitations.

The Instinct or Industry of those Creatures is almost incredible, and therefore I am sensible that many will question the Truth of what I have to say about it, however, I may assure the Reader that I do not Romance in the least. When they have a mind to make a new Settlement or Habitation, and have found a proper place for it, which is commonly in the Channel of a River, provided it be not too deep, or too broad, they look for a Tree on the Bank of the said River, leaning a little towards the Water. They then meet and divide

le.

every bod

M. De La Salle.

creatures, who meet together in a Circle, and because
 Water, and their number is always odd, it seems
 as big as Sheep that they hold a Council, to know
 what is fit to be done. The first thing
 that they come to be done, is to cut down the Tree
 for dexterity they have pitched upon, but not hori-
 zontally, but in such a manner that it
 falls into the very place they have a
 pretty fine, bund to, that is cross the River, to
 stop a kind of rapids, or at least to abate the Rapidity
 of the stream. If the Branches hinder the
 course of the Tree to lye in the Water,
 they cut them likewise, and then make
 a perfect Dike or Bank with Mud and
 gravel together, leaving now and then
 a place open for the Water, lest
 the River should overflow their Bank.
 If the Tree cannot reach the other
 side, they fell another Tree over a-
 gain, and make a per-
 manent Causey or Bridge. This Work
 being compleated, they build their Ha-
 bitations or Caves near that place, and
 employ nothing but mud in the fol-
 lowing manner; they lay a Lay of it,
 too deep, and beat it very hard with their Tails,
 then another, and so on successive-
 ly, till it is about three Foot high; they
 smooth it and Polish it very handsomly,
 and divide it into three several Apart-

ments, which have communication one with the other; one of them is to lie in the second for their Provisions, and the third serves them for a necessary House. They make a Canal or subterranean Aqueduct from the River to one of their Apartments, in which they have a kind of Pond, wherein they hold their Tail, for otherwise they could not live. This Canal serves also for another use, for when they hear a noise, they make their escape through that place into the River. Every one is obliged to work, but if any one has his Tail excoriated or otherwise hurt, he lays it flat upon his back, so that he is unable to work.

*How they
Hunt Beavers.*

When the Savages go a Hunting they follow the Rivers, and as soon as they discover any Causey, Bridge or Bank, they may be sure that the Beavers are not far off. They come as near as they can, but as soon as the Beavers see or hear them, they run through their Canal into the River, but as they must breathe from time to time, the Savages soon shoot them, if it be in Summer time; for in Winter they use another Art to catch them. They make holes in the Ice, and

alle.
 munication of
 hem is to lie
 vifions, and
 ecessary Hou
 r subterrane
 ver to one
 hich they ha
 in they ha
 fe they cou
 rves alfo for
 they hear a
 efcape throu
 r. Every o
 if any one
 otherwife hu
 back, to the
 rk.

ving beat out the Beavers from their
 Habitations into the River, they must
 come to breath through thofe Holes,
 and then the Savages catch them a-
 live by the Tail.

Having refreshed our selves above
 Ten Days in this place, and taken in
 Provisions, we Embarked again on the
 Seventeenth of *December* for *Missilima-*
chinac, but eight days after were forc-
 ed back by a contrary Wind. The
 Savages were gone away, but had left
 some Provisions, which we wanted ve-
 ry much; for the Ice and the malady
 of our Men obliged us to continue in
 that place, where we suffer'd very
 much. Finding our selves in that ex-
 tremity, I advanced into the Woods
 to endeavour to find some relief, and
 it pleas'd God that I met with two
 Savages, of the Nation of the *Outno-*
was, who conducted me to a Village
 belonging to the *Pontoulamis*, where
 we met several *French*-men settled in
 that place, by whom we were kindly
 receiv'd, as also by the Savages. Father
Zenoble understanding that the *Jesuits*
 had a Settlement in the bottom of the
 Bay, thought it was more becoming
 his Character, to pass the Winter a-
 mongst

mongst them, than in company of the Savages, and went thither two days after our arrival; but we continued 'till the next Spring in that place, and liv'd very comfortably.

We diverted our selves at Hunting wild Bulls in the beginning of *March*, the Grass being already grown. These Bulls are near twice as big as ours, the Hair looks like a fine Fleece, and is very long; their Horns are bent backwards, and extraordinary long, their Eyes are likewise larger and bigger than those of our *European Bulls*, which make them look terrible. They go always by Drovers of three or four Hundred in each. When the Savages go a Hunting, they encompass a Drove of these Bulls, and one of them comes creeping as near as he can, and then stands up, making an Out-cry, which frightens away the whole Drove; the Savages being in a Circle, they cannot escape without being shot; but as they become very fierce and dangerous when they are wounded, the Savages shoot them in the Thigh or the Shoulder, to prevent their coming upon them, and when they are down, they break their Heads with Clubs. As they are excellent

*How they
Hunt Bulls.*

company of the
 her two da
 we continu
 hat place, an
 orty and Fifty Bulls.

That which is wonderful in this, is
 the havock, which the Shot sent by the
 of *March*, the
 own. Tho
 as big as our
 e Fleece, an
 orns are be
 ordinary long
 rger and big
 uropean Bull
 errible. The
 three or fou
 the Savage
 pass a Drove
 them come
 a, and the
 t-cry, which
 Drove; the
 they cannot
 but as they
 gerous when
 vages shoot
 shoulder, to
 them, and
 break their
 ey are ex
 cellent

allent Marksmen, they never miss,
 and twenty Men will sometimes kill
 That which is wonderful in this, is
 the havock, which the Shot sent by the
 of *March*, the
 own. Tho
 as big as our
 e Fleece, an
 orns are be
 ordinary long
 rger and big
 uropean Bull
 errible. The
 three or fou
 the Savage
 pass a Drove
 them come
 a, and the
 t-cry, which
 Drove; the
 they cannot
 but as they
 gerous when
 vages shoot
 shoulder, to
 them, and
 break their
 ey are ex
 cellent

Such the rather, because it is nothing
 but a Stone, or a Bone, or some-
 times a piece of very hard Wood,
 pointed and fastned to the end of an
 Arrow with some Fishes-glue, that
 causes this terrible effect. When the
 Savages go to War, they poison the
 point, or extremity of their Dart, so
 that if that remains in the Body, Death
 follows of necessity; the only Re-
 medy in this case, is to draw out
 the Arrow through the other side of
 the Wound; if it goes quite thorough,
 if not, to make an aperture on the
 other side, and so to draw it through;
 after which they know by instinct, cer-
 tain Herbs, the application of which
 draws out the Venom, and Cures
 it.

I stayed all the Month of *March* in
 this place: Father *Zenoble* came back
 here at Spring, and we re-embark-

ing at the Creek we had left, came
to Land at *Missilimachinac* in the
begining of *April*, with a design to stay
there for M. de *la Salle*. From the
11th of *September*, 1681, when we
took our leaves of the *Illinois*, to the
1st of *April*, Seven Months were slip-
ped away; during which time, M. de
Salle, upon the Advice that I had giv-
en him by my Letter, was com-
ing down to the *Illinois* with a good Re-
cruit, with intention to help us. The
Iroquois having Advice of his Descent,
and being afraid of being hemm'd
between two Armies, were retir'd
and the *Illinois* were again entred
to their Possessions. However M.
la Salle found but some few, the re-
st being gone to winter in the Woods,
he exhorted those that remained,
to call their Country-men, assuring them
he would build a Fort that should
shelter them from the Invasion of
their Enemies; he visited the Fort of
Crevecaeur, which was still in the same
condition, and placed therein a small
Garrison of Fifteen or Sixteen *Fren-
ch* and a Commander, with Ammunition
and Arms. After this, he went
again up the River to the great Vi-

The Fort of
Creve-
caeur.

lle.

M. De La Salle.

73

left, came to the place, whither many Families of the Illinois were returned; he laboured hard upon the inclosure of his New Fort, and having understood by some Scouts, that I had taken my way towards *Missilimachinac*, he set forward again to join me, having left some Soldiers and Pioneers at the intended Fort, to continue his Work and defend that Post.

He came not to *Missilimachinac* till about the Fifteenth of *August*, in the Year 1682. There we took new measures to perfect the Discovery we had begun. We must needs think forthwith of making some new Provision for so long a Voyage. It was with this Design, that after Six Days rest, *M. de la Salle* set out in a Canoo for *Frontenac*, Father *Zenoble* and I going along with him; having sailed happily the first day, we landed at a Village called *Tremou*, belonging to the *Iroquois*. *M. de la Salle* Trafficked there with some Skins, and having ordered me to stay for him there, with Father *Zenoble*, he went on board the Canoo for *Frontenac*. There he found his Bark ready, and stored her with abundance of Ammunition and Provisions;

ons; he lifted there some new Souldiers, and eight days after, sent me his Bark laden with fresh Men, good Merchandise, and such things as were most necessary. The Father and I went on board, and landed the first Day at *Niagara*, below the Fall of the River: There we were forced to put our Baggage and Merchandise upon Sledges, and so conduct them to the Lake *Herié*, where we re-embark'd in a Canoo to the number of Twenty Persons, as well Souldiers as Mariners, together with our best Merchandise. After Three days Sail, we landed at the side of the River of the *Miamis*, where having lodg'd ourselves in Huts, I had time to reassemble there some *French* and some *Savages*, *Abenaguis*, *Loups*, *Quicapous*, and others. There I augmented our Provisions by Hunting, and I barter'd some of our Commodities for *Indian* Corn.

There it was that *M. de la Salle* came to rejoin us towards the end of *November*; the day of his Arrival we fell down the River of the *Miamis* in a Canoo, to the Mouth of another River named *Chicacou*; and we went

up it again to a small Harbour, which is but a League from the great River of the *Illinois*. Having put on Shore in this place, we passed the Night with a very great Fire; for the Cold was so sharp, that the next day the Rivers were froze and un-navigable. We were obliged then to have recourse to the Sledge, to carry our Baggage to the Village of the *Illinois*, where we found things in the same state that *M. de la Salle* had left them; only the Village was better Peopled; which gave us opportunity to defer our Intrigues a little, and to renew our Provisions.

The Rivers being still block'd up with Ice, we found our selves oblig'd to begin again our Journey by Land; the Third day of *January*, 1683. we had pusht on our way to Thirty Leagues below. There the Weather grew mild, and the Ice melted, so that Navigation appearing commodious, we went on Board a Canoo, the Twenty Fourth of *January*, and fell down the River of the *Illinois*, to the River *Mississipi*, where we arriv'd the second of *February*.

The

The River
of the Illi-
nois.

The River of the *Illinois*, reckoning from its first Carriage to its dis-emboguing into the River, is at least 160 Leagues Navigable. The adjacent parts are as pleasant as fruitful; one sees there Animals of all sorts Stags, Hinds, Linces, Wild Bulls, Goats, Sheep, Hares, and infinite more, but few Beavers. As to the Trees, they are nothing but Forests of High Trees with great Walks, which seem drawn by a Line; besides Elms, Beech, Plane trees, Cedars, Walnut and Chesnut trees; one sees there whole Plains cover'd over with Pomgranate-trees, Orange-trees, and Lemmon-trees; and in one word, with all kind of Fruit trees.

In many places there are to be seen large Vines, whose tendrels being twisted about the Branches of huge Trees, bear Bunches of Grapes of an extraordinary bigness.

Of the Ozar-
ges.

Being Embarked upon the *Mississippi* we followed the Course of this great River; six Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Illinois*, we met with that of the *Ozages*, the Banks of which and places thereabouts, are no less agreeable and Fertile; 'tis true, in

Water

Water
Mud a
of *Missi*
for mo
Brinks
nut-tree
number
vers; a
is very
up tow
inhabit
in Skin
the Mo

The
Ten Le
lage of
with no
retired
made t
let 'em
After t
we arriv
at the
abachi,
throws
ty Leag
It is by
come to
ons of
lay in

Water carries so great a quantity of Mud along with it, as to change that of *Mississipi*, and make it all Muddy for more than Twenty Leagues. Its Brinks are bordered with great Walnut-trees; one sees there an infinite number of Foot-steps made by the Beavers; and the Hunting for them there is very great and common. Going up towards its Source, its Banks are inhabited by Savages, who trade much in Skins; we passed one Night at the Mouth of this River.

The next day, after we had sailed Ten Leagues, we came to the Village of the *Tamaoas*, where we met with no body at all, the Savages being retired into the Woods to Winter; we made there however some Marks to let 'em know that we had pass'd by. After that, continuing our Voyage, we arrived, after a Course of 3 Days, at the Mouth of the River of the *Ouabachi*, that comes from the *East*, and throws it self into the *Mississipi*, Eighty Leagues from that of the *Illinois*: It is by this River that the *Iroquois* come to make War upon the Nations of the *South*. In this place we lay in Huts one Night, and after a Course

The River of the Ouabachi.

Course of Sixty Leagues, following still our great River, we came to land at a Bank Inhabited by Savages, who are called *Chicacha*. Here it was that we lost a *French-man* of our Company, named *Preudhomme*. The search we made for him during Nine days, gave us an opportunity of discovering several Nations, and of Building a Fort in this place, to serve as a Rest and Habitation for the *French* in that fine Country.

*Hunters
well re-
ceived of
the Sava-
ges in Chi-
cacha.*

During this Interval, Two of our Hunters met with two of the Savages *Chicacha*, who offer'd to conduct 'em into their Village. Our Men, led by a Spirit of Curiosity, follow'd them; they were very well received, and after laden with Presents, and were intreated by the Principal among them, to procure that our Commander will honour them with a Visit. Our People being very well satisfied with their reception, made their report of it to *M. de la Salle*, who the next day went himself with Ten of his Company; he received there all the good treatment that could be expected from People the most civiliz'd; and had no trouble to inspire 'em with Sentiments

ments
the Ki
freely
This
is able
Men;
Plates,
for a st
Reason
Vifage
blets of
their F
with B
Sea Sho
Every
them;
tame He
M. de la
good R
made 'e
ment,
Hatchets
People.
pectation
himself
lived up
found us
ed him
Fort, wh
and gav

M. De La Salle.

79

ments of submission and Obedience to the King. These Savages also consented freely to the finishing of our Fort.

This Nation is very numerous, and is able to furnish out Two Thousand Men; they have all Faces flat like Plates, which is reckoned among them for a stroke of Beauty; it is for this Reason they take care to make the Visage of their Children flat with tablets of Wood, which they apply to their Foreheads, and gird very hard with Bands: All these Nations to the Sea Shore give themselves this Figure. Every thing is very plentiful with them; Corn, Fruits, Grapes, Olives, tame Hens, *Indian Hens*, Bustards, &c. *M. de la Salle* having received such good Refreshment there, and having made 'em, by way of acknowledgment, a Present of some Knives and Hatchets, he returned to his own People. At last, after Nine days expectation, *Preudhomme*, who had lost himself in the Woods, where he had lived upon nothing but Wild Fowl, found us again; *M. de la Salle* entrusted him with the care of finishing the Fort, which he called after his Name, and gave him the Command of it; after

The Nation of the Chichacha.

Preudhomme lost in the Woods, ret. in the French.

after which he took his Course upon the same River towards the end of the Month of *February*.

*An Alarm
caused by a
Drum.*

We were three Days without disembarking: The fourth after having made Fifty Leagues, we came to a Village of the *Cappa*: We had scarce set foot on Land, but we heard a Drum beat; forthwith fancying we saw the Enemy at our Heels, we threw ourselves into our Canoos, and went over to the other side; and so we immediately made a Redoubt to secure our selves from any surprize.

*The good
treatment
which the
Savages
Cappa
gave the
French.*

The Savages came to view us in a Canoo; we sent some of our Men to 'em, to present them with the *Calumet*; they accepted it freely, and at the same time offered themselves to conduct us to their Habitations, and promised us all manner of assistance. *M. de la Salle* was very ready to go thither; in the mean time one of the two Savages went before, to give notice of our arrival to those of his own Nation. Their Prince, accompanied with some of the chief of 'em, came forward to receive us. As soon as he saw *M. de la Salle*, he saluted him in a very grave and respectful manner;

offer'd

offer'd
upon
him by
his Co
long w
sensible
let him
tention
out the
to mak
the *Fre*
the Vil
titude o
were f
Line.
declare
were f
Discove
ceive it
Then t
mation,
to testi
Prince l
perfect
the Or
ed him
him, an
the goo
this, h
Presents

offer'd him any thing that depended upon him or his Nation, and taking him by the Hand, led him towards his Cottage. *M. de la Salle* walking along with him, testified to him how sensible he was of his Civilities, and let him understand his Design and Intentions, which tended to nothing else but the glory of the true God, and to make known to him the Power of the *French King*. Being arrived at the Village, we saw a very great multitude of People, in the midst of whom were some Archers drawn up in a Line. The Prince making a little halt, declared to all the Assembly, that we were sent by the King of *France*, to Discover *North America*, and to receive its People under his Protection. Then there follow'd a general Acclamation, by which the People seem'd to testify their Joy: As soon as the Prince had assur'd *M. de la Salle*, of the perfect submission of all his People to the Orders of the King, he conducted him into his Cottage, and gave him, and those of his Company, all the good treatment possible. Besides this, he made him very considerable Presents, namely, abundance of *Indian*

G

Corn,

Corn, and other necessary Provisions, with which *M. de la Salle* was very well satisfied, as well as with all his other Civilities. This Nation was scarce any thing of Savage; they give Judgment according to their Laws and Customs; every one there enjoys his own Goods in particular.

The Manners and Customs of the Cappa.

The Nation of the Akancéas.

Eight Leagues from hence are the *Akancéas*, whose Land is above sixty Leagues over: They are divided into several Villages, almost at equal distances. The *Cappa* gave us two Guides to carry us to the First, which they call *Togengan*; it stands upon the Bank of a River, and there we were very well received. Two Leagues from this Town, we fell down in a Canoo to that of *Torimant*; and six Leagues from this last, to another called *Ozotoni*. We were equally well received in every place; and as our arrival had already made a noise in all the Country, we found a very numerous Assembly of People in this place, which caused *M. de la Salle* to set up the Arms of the King, with a Shot of our Artillery. The Noise and Fire of our Arms impress'd such a respect upon all the Multitude, and threw

The Arms of the King set up at the noise of the Artillery.

'em in
the Pr
swore
This
is the
Degree
through
Grain, E
The re
derful,
seen, an
Cottage
ted wit
min'd V
of Anim
but one
self in a
shall ple
pitch up
times an
some oth
is dead,
ing; bu
into a gr
make of
is alway
Brutes.
About
ion, are
give plac

Provisions,
he was very
with all his
Nation was
; they give
r Laws and
e enjoys his

nce are the
above sixty
divided in-
ft at equal
ve us two
first, which
ands upon
there we
wo Leagues
down in a
; and six
to another
qually well
and as our
a noise in
a very nu-
e in this
la Salle to
g, with a
Noise and
such a re-
and threw
em

them into such a Consternation, that
the Prince, on the part of his Nation,
swore to us an inviolable Alliance.
This Climate and that of the *Cappa*
is the same; it is about the 34th
Degree of Latitude. The Country
throughout does generally abound in
Grain, Fruits, and Wild Fowl of all sorts.
The temperature of the Air is won-
derful, there is never any Snow to be
seen, and but very little Ice: Their
Cottages are built of Cedar, all mat-
ted within: They have no deter-
min'd Worship; they Adore all sorts
of Animals, or rather they Worship
but one Divinity, which discovers its
self in a certain Animal, such as it
shall please their *Jongleur*, or Priest, to
pitch upon; so that it will be some-
times an Ox, sometimes a Dog, or
some other. When this visible God
is dead, there is an universal Mourn-
ing; but which is presently changed
into a great Joy, by the choice they
make of a new Mortal Deity, which
is always taken from amongst the
Brutes.

The Cli-
mate of this
Country.

The Religi-
on of its
Inhabitants

About Sixty Leagues below this Na-
tion, are the *Taencas*, a People that
give place to none in *America*, either

Taencas.

*Crocodiles
in great
numbers.*

for Force or Beauty of Climate. The *Akanceas* gave us Guides to conduct us thither, and going on Board a Canoo, we still follow'd the Course of the great River. After our first days Voyage, we began to see some Crocodiles along the brink; They are in a very great number upon these Banks, and of a prodigious bigness, some being Twenty or Thirty Foot long. To see so monstrous an Animal, who would believe that it comes into the World but like a Chicken, being hatched of an Egg! only it is observed, that it grows as long as it lives. We took notice that they fled when we pursu'd 'em, and that when we fled they pursued us; we dispersed them with our Fuses, and killed some of 'em. The day following being arriv'd over against the first Village of the *Taencas*, M. de la Salle sent me to the Prince, to give him notice of his Arrival, and gave me two Guides of the *Akanceas*, and two *Abenaguiss* to be my Interpreters.

As this Village stands on the other side of a Lake, which is Eight Leagues in Circumference, and half a League over, we were forced to take a Ca-

mate. The
to conduct
on Board a
the Courfe
er our firft
to fee fome
; They are
upon thefe
us bignefs,
thirty Foot
us an Ani-
at it comes
a Chicken,
only it is
; long as it
t they fled
that when
we disper-
and killed
dowing be-
e firft Vil-
la Salle sent
him notice
two Guides
Abenaguin
the other
nt Leagues
a League
ake a Ca-
noo

noo to crofs it, which we perform'd
in two Hours. As foon as we land-
ed, I was surpriz'd to fee the Gran-
dure of the Village, and the Order of
the Cottages; they are plac'd in di-
vers rows, and in a freight Line,
round about a large fpace, being all
made of Earth, and covered over with
Mats of Cane: We prefently took
notice of two fairer than the reft, one
was the Princes Palace, the other
the Temple; each of them was a-
bout forty Foot fquare, the Walls ten
Foot high, and two Foot thick; the
Roof, in the form of a Cupilo, was
cover'd with a Mat of divers Colours:
Before the Prince's Palace flood a Do-
zen Men Armed with Half-pikes. As
foon as we came up, an Old Man ad-
dressed himfelf to me, and taking me
by the Hand, led me into a great
fquare Hall, the Floor and fides of
which were covered with a very fine
Mat; at the further end of the Hall,
over againft the Entrance, was a very
handsome Bed, with Curtains of a fine
ftuff, made and woven of the Bark of
Mulberry-trees. We faw the Prince
of this People upon this Bed, as upon
his Throne, in the middle of four
handfome

*The Gran-
dure and
Order of the
fine Village
of the Sa-
vages.*

*The Prince
of the Ta-
encas.*

*A Description
of the
Women of
these Sava-
ges.*

handsome Women, and encompassed with above Sixty Old Men, Armed with Bows and Arrows; they were all Cloath'd with very fine White Garments; that of the Prince was adorned with certain Tufts of Wool of different Colours; the rest were all plain. The Prince had upon his Head a Diadem of woven Rushes, very curiously wrought, and enriched with large Pearls, and rais'd with a Plume of various Feathers; all that were about him were bare-headed: The Women were dress'd in Cloaths of the same Stuff; they had upon their Heads little Rush Hats, adorned with several Feathers, and had all Necklaces of Pearl, and fine Ear-Pendants of the same; they had Bracelets of woven Hair, and several other Jewels which set off their Attire: They were not quite Black, but Brown, their Visages something flat, their Eyes Black, sparkling, and pretty large; their Shape fine and free; and they all appear'd to me of a smiling and very pleasant Air.

Being

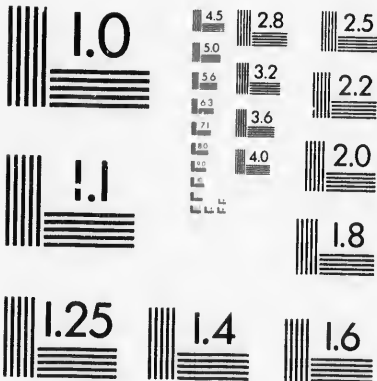
Being
with the
I address
rable P
the Na
having
King of
the King
covery
and to
Governm
came to
and Prot
Countrie
That if
selves in
much to
Yoke, as
power of
dy in the
to them
Wealth:
their Tre
more adv
Not to U
put them
improve
in our Co
become th

Being surpriz'd, or rather charm'd,
 with the Beauties of this Savage Court,
 I address'd my Speech to the vener-
 able Prince, and spoke to him in
 the Name of M. de la Salle. That A Dis-
 course ad-
 dress'd to
 the Prince
 of these Sa-
 vages.
 having the Honour to be sent by the
 King of France, the most potent of all
 the Kings upon Earth, to make a Dis-
 covery of all the Nations of America,
 and to invite them to live under the
 Government of so great a Prince
 I came to offer them our Friendship
 and Protection; to which the upper
 Countries had all freely submitted:
 That if we did pretend to settle our-
 selves in the Country, it was not so
 much to bring them under a rigorous
 Yoke, as to maintain for them, by the
 power of our Arms, what was already
 in their Possession; and to impart
 to them our rarest Arts and our
 Wealth: Not so much to spoil them of
 their Treasures, as to teach them a
 more advantagious way of using them.
 Not to Usurp their Territories, but
 put them in a way to Cultivate and
 improve them, and to instruct them
 in our Commerce. In short, not to
 become their Lords and Masters, but



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

to Establish a Brotherly Friendship with them.

The Prince all this while hearken'd with great Attention, (and one of our *Abenaguis* having given him to understand what I said) embraced me, and with a smiling Countenance, told me, That after the Account I had given him of our great Monarch, he could not but conceive the greatest Respect and Veneration for him; that he should the next day see *M. de la Salle*, and that he would give him more particular assurances of it. Whereupon I presented him in *M. de la Salle's* Name, with a Sword inlaid with Gold and Silver, some Cases of Razors, Cizars, and Knives, and some Bottles of *Aqua vitæ*. I cannot express the Joy and satisfaction he receiv'd these small Presents with. But I took notice at the same time, that one of his Wives, who had a pair of the Cizars in her Hand, admir'd very much the neatness of the Work, and would now and then give me a Smile, which I fancied might be a modest way of asking me for a pair too. I took an opportunity to draw near to her, and pulling out of my Pocket a small steel

Case

Case
a pa
toisé-
mire
her
her F
ing m
me re
have
but t
by us
Conv
pany,
neatly
us, g
Thorn
made
some
to her
togeth
a Silv
kets f
joy; a
two o
and th
ing t
Collar
bout h
an Off
of civi

lle.

endship with
ile hearken'd
d one of our
im to under-
ced me, and
nce, told me,
I had given
h, he could
atest Respec-
n; that he
M. de La Salle,
im more par-
Whereupon
Salle's Name,
h Gold and
zors, Cizars,
ottles of A-
efs the Joy
d these small
ok notice at
his Wives,
Cizars in her
h the neat-
would now
e, which I
est way of
I took an
to her, and
a small steel
Cafe

M. De La Salle.

89

Cafe of Filligreen-work, wherein was a pair of Cizars, and a little Tortoise-shell Knife, and pretending to admire the whiteness and fineness of her Garment, I slipt the Cafe into her Hand, and she received it, squeezing my Hand pretty hard. Which gave me reason to think, that these Women have not Hearts altogether so Savage, but that they might easily be tamed by us, and taught the Politer Arts of Conversation. Another of the Company, who was not less pretty, and neatly accoutred, drawing nearer to us, gave me to understand by the Thorns she shewed me, which she made use of to fasten her Train, that some Pins would be very acceptable to her. I gave her a paper of 'em, together with a Cafe of Needles and a Silver Thimble. These little Trinkets she received with a wonderful joy; and then I gave as much to the two others. She who was the finest and the most agreeable of 'em, having taken notice that I admir'd a Collar of large Pearl that she had about her Neck, took it off, and made an Offer of it to me, with abundance of civility. I refus'd it a good while, but

but reflecting upon the plenty of Pearls that is among them, and that the fishing for 'em was in the Seas thereabouts, I made no further difficulty, and after a few more offers, I accepted of it. But, in return, I gave her ten Yards of Blew Ribbon, which she valued, at least, at as high a rate.

The Night now drawing on, I was going to take my leave of the Prince, but he very earnestly desired me to stay 'till the next day, and gave the charge of me to an Officer, to let me wait for nothing. I did not want much Courtship, and the desire I had to see a little of their Manners and Behaviour, made me readily enough accept of the kind offer. I was conducted into an Apartment furnished much after the rate of that the Prince was in. There they brought me a Collation of Wild-fowl, and Fish, and some Liquors, of which I tasted. All that while there was an Old Gentleman with me, who was very good Company, and especially because he resolved me all the Questions I put to him. As for what concerns their Politicks, he inform'd me, that they were intirely

intirely
solite
as the
his C
that w
first o
and ty
his R
the ot
Life,
eat ou
he wa
ways
Way
with
observ
his Pr
any b
hummm
and I
tell 'n
me th
token
to the
they V
their T
Priests
was a
as the

intirely govern'd by their Prince's Absolute Will. That they obey'd him as their Sovereign; that they own'd his Children his lawful Successors; that when he died, they sacrificed his first or Chief Wife, the first Steward and twenty Men of his Nation, to be his Retinue and wait upon him in the other World. That during his Life, no Man drunk in his Cup, nor eat out of his Dish, or walk'd as he was passing by; that care was always taken, not only to clean the Way for him, but also to strew it with sweet Herbs and Flowers. I observ'd in that little time I was in his Presence, that when he spoke to any body, they made a loud kind of humming before they answer'd him; and I begg'd this Old Gentleman to tell me the Reason of it: He told me that this was lookt upon as a token of admiration and respect. As to their Religion, he told me that they Worship the Sun; that they had their Temples, their Altars, and their Priests. That in that Temple, there was a Fire which burnt perpetually, as the proper Emblem of the Sun.

That

That at the Decrease of the Moon, they carried a great Dish of their greatest Dainties to the Door of the Temple, as an Oblatory Sacrifice; which the Priests offer'd to their God, and then they carried it home, and feasted themselves with it.

As to their Customs, every Spring they go in a Body to some retir'd place, and there turn up a large space of Land, which they do with the Drums beating all the while. After this, they take care to call it the *Desart*, or the *Field of the Spirit*. And thither they go in good earnest, when they are in their Enthusiastick Fits, and there wait for Inspiration from their pretended Deity. In the mean while, as they do this every Year, it proves of no small advantage to them, for by this means they turn up all their Land insensibly, and it becomes abundantly more fruitful. In Autumn they gather their *Indian Corn*, and they keep it in great Baskets 'till the New Moon in the next Month of *June*: Then the Families get together, and every one invites his Friends

and

and M
Cakes
wife;
in Fear

This
of their
and C
the Cu
and th
ther.
ly the
House.
compass
the spa
ple for
People
Wall ar
on whi
own m
their E
Frontisp
ed, all
above t
of a Tr

The
Nave, p
forts of
Hearth

and Neighbours, to come and eat Cakes, and some Meat they get likewise; and thus they spend the Day in Feasting.

This is all I could learn that Day of their Religion, their Government and Customs. The next Day I had the Curiosity of seeing their Temple, and the Old Gentleman had me thither. The Structure of it was exactly the same with that of the Prince's House. As to the out-side, it is encompassed with a great high Wall, the space betwixt that and the Temple forming a kind of Court, where People may walk. On the top of the Wall are several Pikes to be seen, upon which are stuck the Heads of their own most notorious Criminals, or of their Enemies. On the top of the Frontispiece, there is a great Knob raised, all covered round with Hair, and above that, an heap of Scalps in form of a Trophy.

The inside of the Temple is only a *Nave*, painted on all sides, at top with all sorts of Figures; in the midst of it is an Hearth instead of an Altar, upon which

which there is continually three great Billets burning, standing up on end; and two Priests dress'd in White Vestments, are ever looking after it, to make up the Fire and supply it. It is round this that all the People come to say their Prayers, with strange kind of Hummings. The Prayers are three times a Day; at Sun rise, at Noon, and at Sun set. They made me take notice of a sort of Closet cut out of the Wall, the inside of which was very fine: I could see only the Roof of it, on the top of which there hung a couple of spread Eagles, which look'd towards the Sun. I wanted to go into it; but they told me that it was the Tabernacle of their God, and that it was permitted to none but their High Priest to go into it. And I was told that this was the Repository of their Wealth and Treasures; as Pearls, Gold and Silver, precious Stones, and some Goods that came out of *Europe*, which they had from their Neighbours.

After I had seen all these Curiosities, I took my leave of all those that

that
with
la Sa
Accou
had r
Tacuca
pecial
ackno
Some
toward
Barge,
Wome
on se
them
others
of it.
a resp
that gr
sidering
thanke
him, a
it but
his Ma
doubt b
ledge h
assure l
and Pr
Tacuca's
he had

that were with me, and went back with my two Interpreters, to M. de la Salle; to whom I gave a faithful Account of the good Entertainment I had received from the Prince of the *Tacucas*; of his Magnificence, and especially of his good Inclinations to acknowledge the King's Authority. Some time after we saw him coming towards us, in a very magnificent Barge, with Drums beating, and the Women that attended him playing on several Instruments: Some of them were in his own Barge, some in others that went along by the side of it. M. de la Salle received him in a respectful manner, and yet with that gravity as best became him, considering the Character he bore. He thanked him for the honour he did him, and told him he did not receive it but in the Name of the Prince his Master; and that as he did not doubt but he was willing to acknowledge his Power, so he might safely assure him of his Royal Friendship and Protection. The Prince of the *Tacuca's* made Answer, That what he had heard of the Grandure of the
French

King, and of the Valour of his Subjects, would not permit him to hesitate, in paying him in Person the Hommage which he was perswaded was due to him whom he represented; and that tho' he was a Sovereign, he chearfully submitted to our great King's Power; and that he should be glad to merit our Alliance and Protection by his Services. After these mutual Protestations of Friendship, they made each other their Presents. *M. de la Salle* presented him with two pieces of Ribbon, and some Trinkets for his Wives. The Prince gave him six of his richest Robes, a Collar of Pearl, a *Piroque* or Barge filled with Ammunition and Provision; after which, there was brought a Dozen of Bottles of *Aqua vitæ*, prepar'd with Sugar and Almonds, and Apricock Kernels. Then the King's Health was drunk, with a discharge of all our Guns, after that of the Prince of the *Tacuca's* in like manner; after which he went again into his *Piroque*, and went away very well satisfied.

We continued all that Day on that Shore,

Shore
and
Degre
being
went

M.
roque,
see w
ders t
as I w
above
ed on
ready
with
me sto
his Co
and sto
our M
posture
made t
and I
go and
ing con
the Col
it very
and ga
they w
M. de

M. De La Salle.

97

Shore, where we took the Altitude, and found our selves at the 25th Degree of Latitude, the next day being the 22d of *March* 1693, we went and lay ten Leagues off.

M. de la Salle perceiving a *Pirogue*, that made up towards us, to see what we were, gave me orders to chase it ; which I did ; but as I was just going to lay hold of her, above a Hundred Men straight appeared on the Shore, with their Bows ready to shoot us. *M. de la Salle*, with loud calling after me, made me stop ; and being come back to his Company again, we went all and stood over against them with our Muskets ready presented. This posture of ours frightened them, and made them lay down their Arms ; and I was immediately ordered to go and carry them the *Calumet*. Being come up to them, I offer'd them the Collar of Peace ; they accepted it very civilly ; they embraced me, and gave me to understand, that they would be Friends with us. *M. de la Salle* seeing in what an obliging

H

liging

Day on that
Shore,

liging manner they had received me, came to join us on the same Shore; and as soon as those Savages perceived him to be our Chief, they paid him all kind of Honours and Respect. He told them that he did not require any thing from them, but a chearful Acknowledgment and Submission, to our great King's Orders; to which he added, for their encouragement, the Example of the other greater Nations, and made use of the Arguments he before used on like occasions. They answer'd him, that they had their Prince, and that they could determine nothing without his Orders, and offer'd either to bring him to us, or to conduct us to his Dwelling. *M. de la Salle*, who was always glad of an Opportunity of seeing the Situation, Manners, and Faculty of those Nations, chose the latter. Their Village was four great Leagues off from the Shore. We were no sooner come into it, but the Prince came to receive us; he had us into his Cottage, where he treated us very hand-

hand
the
Peop
ces;
Their
Twer
great
shery
about

The
of tha
bottor
these p
most p
you m
open t
of He
the fir
the Sh
white
Shell.
in tim
as we
that th
from t
fairer t
on the

handfomly, it was the Prince of the Nation of the *Naches*. This People is divided into two Provinces; this was the least of the two. Their Territories are seldom above Twenty Leagues compass, and their greatest Revenues is the Pearl Fishery which they have in the Sea about them.

There is a great many Divers of that Nation, who dive to the bottom of the Water, and fetch up these precious Shells from the lowermost part of the Rocks. On a fair day you may see the Shells on the Rocks open themselves to receive the Dew of Heaven. Which Dew breeds the first Seeds of the Pearl within the Shells, which appear like little white Grain that sticks fast to the Shell. These small soft Grains do in time become hard and white, as we see they are. It is observed that the Pearls which are fetch'd from the bottom of the Sea, are fairer than those which are found on the Rocks, because the Sun

tarnishes these, and the Thunder is destructive to their Seeds.

This little Prince presented M. de la Salle with some Dozens of 'em, of a considerable bigness; and in return, we gave him a Hatchet, a Kettle, and some Knives. They gave us besides these, some Provisions; and having staid there the whole Day, we went away the next very well satisfied with each other. They gave us a couple of Guides, to shew us the way into the other Nation of the same Name, which is Ten Leagues farther in the Country. In the mean time M. de la Salle sent two of our Men to carry some fresh Provisions to those that waited for us by the Water side, together with Orders to fall Ten Leagues lower down the River, and to stay for him there.

Thus we went under the Conduct of our Guides, and came that Night to the great Village of *Nasches*. This Nation is able to set out

out
time
well
Corn
live-t
vast
vast
Fishing
Emple

The
great
many
Provisi
nerouff
ed their
a Volle
took ou
assured
and we
with ne

Being
we went
Leagues
Coroas,
us as th
Homage.

M. De La Salle.

101

out Three Thousand Men in any time of War. Their Land is very well Cultivated, and bears *Indian* Corn, all sorts of Fruit-Trees, Olive-trees, and Vines. There are vast Meadows to be seen there; vast Forests and all sorts of Cattle; Fishing and Hunting being all their Employment and their Wealth.

The Prince received us with a great deal of Joy; made us a great many Presents both of Pearl and Provisions, and treated us very generously. The next day we planted there the King's Arms, giving a Volley of Shot; after which we took our leaves of the Prince, who assured us of his intire Submission; and we went to meet our Men with new Provisions.

Being got aboard our Canoos, we went forward, and about Eight Leagues off, we came to the Village *Coroas*, where the Prince receiv'd us as the rest had done, and paid Homage.

H 3

The

The next day being the 27th of *March*, 1683. we planted our Huts at the Mouth of a great River, which comes from the *West*, and is called *La Sablonniere*; Ten Leagues from hence, as we continued our Course, we found the River divide it self into three Channels; I took the Right-hand-stream, M. de *la Forest* took the left, and M. de *la Salle* the middle way; we follow'd each our Course for about Ten Leagues, and in a little time after, we found our selves re-join'd by the uniting of the Three Streams again into one. We were hardly got together again, and gone forward Five or Six Leagues, but we espied some Fisher-men by the Water-side, who were *Quinipissa's*. As soon as they saw us come near, they alarmed all the rest of their Men, and straight the Drum fell a beating, and the Shore was in an instant lined with Savages, all armed with Bows and Arrows; we were willing to send Four *French* Men to treat with 'em, but they

were

were
of Ar
Savage
they c
in like
M. de
ny fur
leave t
our fel

Two
Quinipissa's
the V
found
great F
on and
mighty
ing tha
there,
Ten
gun to
the Sho
extende
Shells o
some li
Snails
and all
ty of C
and aft

were feverely sent back by a shole of Arows; after which, four of our Savages offer'd to go to see what they could do, but they were used in like manner; in so much that M. de la Salle, not willing to run any further risque here, he bid us leave them in quiet, and trouble our selves no further with them.

Twelve Leagues from the *Quinipissa's*, we fell to the Right, on the Village call'd *Tangibao*; we found it pillag'd, sack'd, and a great Heap of dead Bodies one upon another. This sight struck a mighty horrour in us, and concluding that it was not good staying there, we went on; and about Ten Leagues further, we begun to find the Water brackish; the Shore seem'd somewhat more extended, and all strewed with Shells of different shape and figure, some like drinking Cups, some like Snails ending in a spiral point, and all of a most agreeable variety of Colours. We kept on still, and after an Hours sailing, we put

H 4. our

our selves into a Canoo, and kept along the Coast, the better to take our Observations of the Shore, and so came back to land at the River's Mouth.

This was on the Seventh of April, 1683. The first thing we then took care to do, was to return our humble thanks to Almighty God, for our good Success, and for that he had carried us in safety to the end of our Voyage, after more than Eight Hundred Leagues, sailing and rowing with so small a handful of Men, and so little Ammunition; and that through so many barbarous Nations, which we had not only discover'd, but in some measure made subject to us. We Sung the *Te Deum*; after which, taking our Canoos, and our Equipage upon Sledges, we went and planted our Huts a little above the Shore, to be out of the reach of the Sea, which wholly overflows it. after six Hours Ebb, during which it's left quite dry.

Having

Having pitched here our New Camp, we fastned a Cross to the top of a large Tree, and set up the Arms of *France*: After which we raised three or four Huts more, and Entrenched our selves there. Then M. de la Salle took the Altitude, to know where the Mouth of the *Mississipi* was. The *Spaniards*, who had attempted to find it out, tho' in vain, had already given it the Name of *Del Rio Ascondido*. According to M. de la Salle's Calculation, it is between the Twenty second and Twenty third Degree of Latitude; that it throws it self into the Gulph of *Mexico*, with a large Channel which is Twenty Leagues wide, and very deep and Navigable.

M. de la Salle would be a little acquainted with its Shores, before he would leave them. It is certain that they are not fit to be inhabited, by reason of the frequent Inundations by the Spring-Tides, and

Having

and the Barrenness of the Shore : there is nothing but Canes and Reeds, and Woods overthrown. But about a League and a half within the Country, it is the most pleasant in the World, fine large Meadows, fair Woods full of Mulberry-trees, Nut-trees, and Chestnut-trees. The Fields are covered with all sorts of Fruit-Trees, as Orange, Lemmon, Pomegranate, and the sides of the Hills with Vines, and the Fields bear *Indian* Corn twice a Year. We saw in all their Ponds and Rivers vast quantities of Water-Fowl, Geese, Ducks, and Teal, Moor-hens, &c. and in the Woods and Fields, Partridges, Pheasants, Quails, and other kind of Fowl ; of four Footed Creatures all sorts, especially one large sort of Oxen, which they call *Cibola's* ; these are much larger than any hath been mention'd, and are raised like a Cammel from the Chine to the middle of the Back ; they feed among the Canes, and go together sometimes no less in number than Fifteen Hundred.

They

They
icular
ne mi
here i
vages
et fire
pecially
ing h
might
of a fu
rikes
Herd, t
elves,
wait up
arrows,
make an
them.
ages T
hes, ha
were th
when th
left us
ve seiz'
they fea
and we
went av

alle.

Shore: here
d Reeds, and
But about a
within the
t pleasant in
e Meadows,
ulberry-trees,
t-trees. The
a all sorts of
e, Lemmon,
fides of the
l the Fields
ce a Year.
onds and Ri-
Water-Fowl,
Moor-hens,
and Fields,
Quails, and
f four Foot-
especially
which they
e much larg-
a mention'd,
ammel from
ddle of the
g the Canes,
imes no less
n Hundred.
They

M. De La Salie.

107

They Hunt them after a par-
ticular manner. When they are in
the midst of these Canes, where
there is no coming at them, the
Savages get round about them, and
set fire to 'em in several places, es-
pecially when the Wind is some-
thing high, which makes at first
mighty smoke, which turns all
of a sudden into a Flame, and this
strikes so great a terrour into the
Herd, that they all disperse them-
selves, and the Savages, who lie in
wait upon Trees, shoot some with
Arrows, some with Bullets, and
make an incredible Slaughter among
them. By good Fortune, the Sa-
vages *Tangibao*, *Quinipissas*, and *Na-
bes*, had been a Hunting when we
were there (for they always join
when they Hunt them) and they
left us three fine large ones, which
we seiz'd, and having dress'd them,
they feasted us all for three Days,
and we had some left the day we
went away from thence.

M.

M. de la Salle, having a mind to go and give an Account of his Discoveries to Count Frontenac, and to confirm the Nations he had gone through in the good esteem of us, resolved to go up the same River back again to the *Illinois*, and thence for the Lakes, in order to get to *Quebeck*, and from thence set Sail for *France*, and give the Court a true account of his Successes.

The Eleventh of *April* of the same Year 1683, we got in a Canoo on the said River; we were about Sixty of us. As this River divides it self into three Channels, about Fifty Leagues from the Sea, we came the first day to the place where they met together, and in Six days after that, to the Point where it divides it self: There our Victuals failing, it was highly necessary to look about us. The first Relief we met with, were some Crocodils; we kill'd two of 'em

• in

in a little while, that were pretty
 large: The flesh of them is good,
 white, firm, and very well tasted.
 It is as firm as Tunny, and near
 as in taste to Salmon, and we feasted
 on it for some days. The Stream
 of our River began now to grow
 stronger against us, so that we
 were forced to get on Shore, and
 to take our Sledges, as far as *Quini-*
ssa's. As this People had given
 us a scurvey welcome as we came
 down, we were forced to consult
 how we should do to make them
 a little more tractable, wherefore
 we sent two *Abenaguis*, and two
Loups towards them. They met
 with four Women only, which they
 brought to us that Night. This
 prize pleased us very well, hoping
 that by their means, we should
 best compass our Designs. We used
 those Women with all the Civility
 and Prudence imaginable; and
 being come near to their Village,
 the next morning we sent one of
 them home with some small Pre-
 sents, to shew that we did not
 come

April of the
 got in a Ca-
 ; we were
 this River
 ce Channels,
 om the Sea,
 to the place
 ner, and in
 the Point
 elf: There
 was highly
 us. The
 ith, were
 two of 'em
 in

come in an Hostile manner, on
 wanted their Friendship, and wh
 was chiefly necessary, some Recruit
 of our Provisions. She shewed them
 all the little Gewgaws we had give
 her, and related to them what good
 Entertainment she had receive
 from us, and what Designs w
 came upon. Immediately they sent
 four of the Chief of their Nation
 us, who brought along with them
 some Provisions, and invited us
 come and be merry with them.
 We then restored the Three Wo
 men into their Hands, and we came
 nearer to them, but still standing
 upon our Guard. When we were
 come into their Village, they pre
 sented us some of their Fruits, and
 some Water-Fowl pretty well dress'd.
 After this Refreshment, we retir'd
 about a Hundred Paces from them,
 and lodg'd in our Huts that Night, betw
 tween the Village and the River. By
 break of Day the set treacherous Rogue
 surrounded, and attacked us: But
 they mist of their aim; for
 we had set Sentinels all that Night
 and

and v
 were
 killed
 blow,
 and w
 and h
 more,
 and w
 to serv

From
 the N
 dian C
 and w
 good c
 straight
 Salle, a
 pass'd,
 Scalps
 brought
 great
 the mo
 shew
 to be f

The
 give o
 fetch'd
 an

alle.

manner, on
hip, and wh
some Recruit
e shewed the
we had give
em what good
had receive
Designs w
ately they fe
their Nation
ng with the
invited us t
with them
Three Wo
and we carr
still standi
hen we wer
ge, they pre
ir Fruits, an
y well dress
, we retire
s from them
that Night, be
the River. B
nerous Rogue
ted us: Bu
aim; fo
all that Night
and

M. De La Salle.

and with their first Approach, we were prepared to receive them. We killed five or six the very first blow, upon which the rest fled; and we pursued them a little way, and having killed three or four more, we thought that was enough, and we took their Scalps with us to serve for a Trophy.

From thence we went forward to the *Naches*; we had hid some *Indian* Corn there, as we went down, and we found it again in very good condition. The Prince came straightway to receive us; *M. de la Salle*, after the first Compliments pass'd, presented him with the Scalps of the *Quinipissa's* we had brought with us, who were his greatest Enemies. Which made it the more grateful, and served to shew him that we were not Men to be fool'd with.

The first thing he did, was to give order for something to be fetch'd to refresh us; which we freely

freely accepted of. All this while we observed that we saw no Women in the Village, which made us suspect some Roguery. Notwithstanding we kept eating and drinking, and never seem'd to take any notice of any thing, but we kept our Arms all the while. A little while after we spied a great number of Men in Arms drawing towards us, and we in an instant put our selves in a posture of defence. But the Prince bid us fear nothing, and assured us that we never needed to entertain any suspicion of them; he went up to 'em and commanded them to halt. After which, he told us, that it was a Party of his Men who had been against the *Iroquois*, but that they for their own part were resolv'd ever to maintain a firm Friendship with us. His words he confirm'd by some Presents that followed, as also some Provisions, which we heartily and thankfully received, leaving them, by way of return, some of our Canoos, which indeed

were

were
that v
but v
our ca
Af
Course
Akance
handse
Thu
differ
al of t
the tre
due m
rity, a
not o
and a
brough
them
On
we lef
forward
ver of
went c
to the
M. de
Father
a good
was co
ty of

le.
 this while
 saw no Wo-
 which made
 ery. Not-
 eating and
 m'd to take
 g, but we
 while. A
 ied a great
 ns drawing
 an instant
 ture of de-
 bid us fear
 s that we
 ain any suf-
 t up to 'em
 o halt. Af-
 that it was
 o had been
 ut that they
 e resolved
 Friendship
 e confirmed
 ollowed, as
 which we
 y received,
 of reuoc
 hich indeed
 were

were but cumbersome to us; and that we came off safe and sound, but we attributed our safety to our care and watchfulness.

After this, we continued our Course toward the *Tacuca's*, and the *Akancéa's*, who received us very handsomly at our Landing.

Thus, passing through so many different Nations, we made trial of the faithfulness of some, and the treachery of others; and by a due mixture of mildness and severity, and a constant care, we did not only frustrate their Designs, and avoid their Ambush, but we brought them to Terms, and made them submit to us.

On the Twelfth of *May*, 1683, we left the *Akancéa's*, and pushed forward to the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*; after which we went on along the Shore, quite up to the Fort *Preudhomme*, where *M. de la Salle* fell dangerously ill. Father *Gabriel* staid with him, with a good many of his Men; and I was commanded to go with Twenty of his Men to *Missilamachinac*,

to look after his Affairs. I left him there the Fifteenth of *May*.

I went the first Day to lie at *Ouabaches*; where I was made very welcome.

Twenty Leagues further, I met with some *Iroquois*. These Savages, who are the most barbarous of all others, are sneakingly submissive when their Party is the weakest, but most unmerciful when they have an advantage. There was but Five of them that met us; and they told us we should not go far e're we should meet a Company of above Four Hundred Men well Armed. This Advice made us take care to stand upon our Guard, for truly it is not very safe to fall into the Hands of these Barbarous People when they march in a Body. We had not gone a quarter of a League, but we spied a little Army, which we took at first to be *Iroquois*, but they were *Tavaroa's* who had joined themselves with some *Illinois*. They seeing our Fire-Arms, took us for *Iroquois*, and were going to surround us, with a Design to burn us, for that

is

is the
those
ever
great
Natio
the A
we v
and g
ons.
River
Days
ved a
ing o
M. de
ed us
He ft
give
gave
St. L
nished
pose o
all his
French
Quebec
Day,
Illinois.
I w
head
Savage

le.
 airs. I left
 h of *May*.
 ay to lie at
 s made very
 ther, I met
 These Sava-
 st barbarous
 kingly sub-
 Party is the
 merciful when
 ge. There
 m that met
 we should
 ould meet a
 ur Hundred
 his Advice
 stand upon
 is not very
 nds of these
 they march
 not gone a
 t we spied
 we took at
 they were
 themselves
 y seeing our
 or *Iroquois*,
 rround us,
 us, for that
 is

is the usual way of dealing with those barbarous Fellows, whensoever they get any of them; so great is the abhorrence which all Nations have against them. But the *Illinois* having discover'd who we were, they unbent their Bows, and gave us part of their Provisions. We pursued our Road to the River *Chicacou*, and after Twenty Days Journey, we at length arrived at *Missilimachinac*, in the beginning of *July*; where we staid for *M. de la Salle*, who came and joined us in *September* the same Year. He staid there but three Days, to give some necessary Orders. He gave me the command of Fort *St. Louis*, with orders to see it finished, and a full power to dispose of the Lands adjacent, and left all his Men under me, except six *French* Men he took with him to *Quebeck*. We went away the same Day, he for *Canada*, I for the *Illinois*.

I went directly to *Miamis*, at the head of Forty Men, *French* and Savages. I came to it on the 6th

of *January*, 1684, and visited the Fort, which was in a very good condition. There I left Ten of my Men well Armed, and pursuing my Journey, I got, by the end of the Month, to Fort *St. Louis*. I set Men at work about it immediately, and in less than two Months time I compleated it. Presently after this, I invited all the Neighbouring Nations to come to it.

There needed no great pains or Art to get them thither. The beauty of the Country, the fruitfulness of the Land, the convenience of a fine Navigable River; the nearness of about a Hundred different Nations, and of those little Lakes, or rather little Seas, which make it a fit Seat of Commerce for all *North America*; and reach from the River *St. Laurent* to the Gulf of *Mexico*. In short, the advantageous Scituation of this Fort, which was design'd as a Bulwark for all the Nations that should come to settle there, against all irruptions of the barbarous Nations, was a sufficient Invitation and Inducement

men
ther
ther
Hut.
two
ful
Nati
seen,
Sava
lished
some
how
as it
civil
barou
In
being
satisfa
la Cor
been
Order
thithe
not fa
with
and v
Nation
to the
um wa
ment

lle.
 visited the
 very good
 fit Ten of
 and pursu-
 by the end
 St. Louis.
 ut it imme-
 wo Months
 resently af-
 the Neigh-
 e to it.
 ut pains or
 her. The
 the fruit-
 convenien-
 River; the
 ndred diffe-
 those little
 eas, which
 Commerce
 and reach
 rent to the
 t, the ad-
 this Fort,
 Bulwark for
 ould come
 all irrupti-
 ons, was
 nd Induce-
 ment

ment to them to come and dwell
 there. So that in a little time,
 there was above Five Hundred
 Huts made up, and in less than
 two Months, there was a wonder-
 ful great concourse of People of all
 Nations. By this it is easie to be
 seen, with how little difficulty the
 Savages might be tamed and po-
 lished, by planting here and there
 some Colonies of *Europeans*. For
 how few soever they be, they are,
 as it were a ciment of Concord and
 civil Society amongst the most bar-
 barous Nations.

In the mean while M. *de la Salle*
 being arriv'd at *Quebec*, had the dis-
 satisfaction not to meet with M.
la Comte de Frontenac; for he had
 been re-manded to *France* by an
 Order from Court, and was gone
 thither. After his Arrival, he did
 not fail to acquaint all the City
 with the Discoveries he had made,
 and with the News of so many
 Nations yielding themselves subject
 to the King's Power. The *Te De-*
um was sung, as an acknowledg-
 ment of this happy Addition of
 I 3 glory

glory and Honour to the Crown. The earnest desire which M. de la Salle had, to go to give the King and his Ministers an Account of the success of his Travels, made him hasten his Departure. He went from *Canada* in the beginning of *October, 1684*. But before he set Sail, he sent the *Chevalier de Bogis* to me, as a Person that had been highly recommended to him. He came to me to *St. Louis's Fort*. I received him as well as I could, and gave him the best Entertainment that my Condition would permit me.

On the Twentieth of *March*, in the same Year; having received Advice, that the *Iroquois*, being jealous of our new Establishment, were coming against us with considerable Forces; I sent an Express to M. de la *Durontai*, Governour of the Fort *Missilimachinac*, for some assistance. In the mean while I raised new Fortifications, and by means of good Ditches, Rampires, and other Works, I put the Village into a good posture of Defence.

fence.
of *Ma*
numbe
them
first
Week
forced
of *For*
one c
Slaves
they r
of, an
come
were
Scalps,
happily
and ca
Abo
la Dur
Jesuit,
assist
In the
was c
the C
Chang
New
look'd
their P
severe,

the Crown.
 ch M. de la
 e the King
 Account of
 vels, made
 . He went
 eginning of
 ore he set
 er de Bogia
 t had been
 him. He
 s's Fort. I
 s I could,
 Entertain-
 would per-

March, in
 ceived Ad-
 being jea-
 ablishment,
 with con-
 an Express
 overnour of
 for some
 n while I
 s, and by
 Rampires,
 e the Vil-
 re of De-
 fence.

fence. They came on the 28th
 of *March*, and lay before us, to the
 number of Five Hundred; we beat
 them back bravely in their very
 first Attacks; at last, after Six
 Weeks, we raised the Siege, and
 forced them to retire with the loss
 of Fourscore of theirs, and not of
 one of ours. They took a few
 Slaves in the Neighbourhood, that
 they might have something to Brag
 of, and might not be thought to
 come back empty; but as they
 were just a going to flea their
 Scalps, the poor Wretches were
 happily so cunning as to get away,
 and came to us in our Fort.

About the 15th of *April*, M. de
la Durontai, and Father de *Loy* a
 Jesuit, with Sixty *French* came to
 assist me, but it was needless then.
 In the mean while M. de *la Barre*
 was come to *Quebeck*, to succeed
 the Count de *Frontenac*. This
 Change was a dreadful blow to
 New *France* in general, which
 look'd upon Count de *Frontenac* as
 their Patron. But it proved no less
 severe, in respect to my own par-
 ticular.

ricular. For no sooner was this new Governour come over, who was a Friend and Relation of the Chevalier *de Bogia*, but he gave him the command of *St. Louis's* Fort; the rise and perfection of which were all owing to me. He directed his Orders to *M. de la Durontai*, to deliver to me; who informed me with the new Governour's Orders, to give up my Command of the place, and to invest the Chevalier therewith. I could do no other but obey the Orders. I left some considerable Effects in the Fort, whereof I made an Inventory, which the Chevalier was so kind as to set his Hand to; and I left the place the same day, taking with me what was of most moment and use. I first took the Road of *Montreal*, and thence went to *Quebeck*, where I arriv'd in the beginning of *July*. I could do no less than go and wait on the Governour, and give him a faithful Account of the Condition and Importance of the place, which I had left by his Order, and of the state of the Country in general. He
heard

he heard me very courteously, and very civilly offer'd me any other Post I should desire in *America*. I thank'd him for his kind Offers, and told him, I was not willing to take any Employment until *M. de la Salle* came back; and so we parted.

As soon as I arriv'd, I did not fail to write to *M. de la Salle*, and give him an Account how I was served, and how I thought my self wronged, by being thus put out of the Command he had given me. Adding, that I really thought there might be some Danger of the Peoples sitting uneasie under a new Governour, and forsaking their new Habitations, or committing some Disorder. I writ besides to *M. de la Forest*, a Friend of mine, to support my Interests with our common Protector. These Letters had all the good effect I could wish or hope for. I received an Answer to my Business by *M. de la Forest* himself, who came back to *Quebeck* in the latter end of *July 1684*. I had the satisfaction to learn from him what a gracious reception *M. de la Salle* had met with at Court, and what considerable For-

ces

ces the King had granted him to settle the Colonies in the New-foundlands; and withal that he was imbark'd for the Gulf of *Mexico*; but what compleated my joy was, that I triumphed over mine Enemies, by my restitution to St. *Louis's* Fort, in the Quality of Governour, and Captain; for which this Gentleman brought me the Letters which M. de *la Salle* had obtain'd from the King in my favour.

I equipp'd my self straightway with Arms and all Materials necessary, as well for the Fortification of the place, as for the raising of my Company. And after we had spent some days together at *Quebeck* M: de *la Forest* and I, went away together the First of *November*, he for *Frontenac*, of which place he was going Governour, and I for the *Illinois*.

The Ice putting a stop to our Voyage on the River of St. *Laurence*, we were forced to stay and Winter at *Montreal*, until the next Spring, in 1685.

In the beginning of *April*, we got up the River again as far as the Fort

Fron-

Fronte
M. la
the fir
ter I h
got to
Miami
of the
Fort S
same Y
The
ately c
sible m
Respe
a suita
but at
of M. a
all othe
my self
ters Pa
Chief, a
is, with
to hono
der with
and put
place, w
I had
at the
he shoul
vice up

Frontenac, where I took my leave of *M. la Forest*. I went in a Canoo on the first Lake to *Magara*, where after I had shot the fall of the River, I got to *Missilimachinac*, and then to *Miamis*, and being come to the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, I went to Fort *St. Louis*, about *June 15* in the same Year.

The *Chevalier de Bogis*, immediately entertain'd me with all possible marks of Joy, Friendship, and Respect; and I endeavour'd to make a suitable return to his Kindness; but at last, after having inform'd him of *M. de la Salle's* Embarking, and of all other News then stirring; I found my self oblig'd to shew him the Letters Patents, to be Commander in Chief, and Governour of Fort *St. Louis*, with which the King thought fit to honour me. He receiv'd this Order with a great deal of submission, and put me again in possession of the place, with all the Effects with which I had entrusted him, assuring me, at the same time, that nevertheless he should still be ready to do me service upon all occasions, and always

to

to perform the Office of a faithful Friend. We spent the rest of the day together in amicable Conversation, and the next Morning he departed a third time for the Town of *Quebeck*.

In the mean while the *Miamis* and the *Illinois*, neighbouring Nations and our Allies, being at variance about certain trivial pretensions; I endeavour'd to reconcile them; having receiv'd from both Parties Hostages and Pledges of their Fidelity. In the beginning of *August*, being much disturb'd that I had heard no News of *M. de la Salle*, I pass'd over to *Mississimachinac*, to make some Enquiry after him. There I was inform'd that the *Marquess d'Enonville* succeeded *M. de la Barre*, in quality of Governour of *New France*; and I had also the Honour to receive a Letter from him; in which he was pleas'd to express his desire of entering into a Conference with me, about the Design he had to make War with the *Iroquois*; at the same time he gave me to understand, that *M. de la Salle*, having been for a long time at Sea, had, without doubt, already enter'd the Gulf with four

M. D'Enonville
nominated
in the place
of M. de la
Barre.

tight y: The

of a faithful
 est of the day
 Conversation,
 he departed a
 n of *Quebeck*
 e *Miamis* and
 Nations and
 nce about cer-
 endeavour'd
 ving receiv'd
 hostages and
 . In the be-
 ng much di-
 no News of
 er to *Missi-*
 Enquiry after
 m'd that the
 ceeded M. de
 Governour of
 also the Ho-
 from him;
 d to express
 a Conference
 gn he had to
 uois; at the
 understand,
 g been for a
 thout doubt,
 f with four
 tight

eight Ships, given him by the King,
 and that apparently he must needs
 have arriv'd at the Mouth of the Ri-
 ver *Mississipi*, or in some other Port.
 This Letter serv'd only to increase
 the Earnest desire I had to meet him,
 insomuch that I immediately took
 care to provide what Supplies I could
 for him; fitted out Twenty *Canadi-*
ans, and returning to the *Illinois*, with
 my new Recruits; I arriv'd within
 a Month, at *St. Louis's* Fort: Where,
 after having given necessary Orders,
 I left the Command of the Place to
 the *Sieur de Bellefontaine*; and set for-
 ward with Forty Men for the Gulf
 of *Mexico*. Thus we pass'd down our
 River into the great one of *Mississipi*,
 follow'd its Course to the Sea, and
 spent about two Months in perform-
 ing this Voyage.
 Upon our Arrival on the Sea shore,
 not meeting with what I sought for,
 nor any Person who could give me
 any Information about the matter,
 I sent out two Boats, *viz.* one to the
East, and the other to the *South-west*,
 to endeavour to make some Discove-
 ry: They row'd up and down about

Twen-

Twenty Leagues from one side to another, along the Coast, and having desery'd nothing, were oblig'd to stand in for some Port for want of Fresh Water, and return'd to join our Fleet, after a Course of two days without being able to get any notice of what I expected. All that I received from them by way of Consolation was only a Porpoise, and some very fine Shells of Mother of Pearl, which they took on a Rock.

Therefore perceiving that it would be to no purpose to wait there any longer, I advis'd with the most prudent Men of our Company, about the Course we ought to steer at our return. I was inclin'd to follow the Coast as far as *Menada*, hoping by that means, continually to discover some new Country, or to take some good Prize: But the most part were of the contrary Opinion; affirming it was safer to keep a known Road, rather than to take one that was not so, and which otherwise could not but be a very difficult passage; as well by reason of the High Lands along the Coast as for the great number of Rivers that

unloa
ly, and

unloa
that v
lution
we ca

Before
serv'd,
de la S
Kings
to be
ness of
up a li
rected
upon it

France.
same p
being
we fet

velling
the Riv

On th
the Cou

Comma

us, and
begg'd

us, dur
ing us

admit 'e
lies. F

submissiv
ly, and

lle.

M. De La Salle.

one side to a
t, and having
e oblig'd to
for want of
urn'd to join
of two days
get any notice
that I receiv
f Consolation
nd some very
f Pearl, which
that it woul
it there any
most prudent
y, about the
er at our re
o follow the
oping by the
discover som
ke some goo
t were of the
rming it wa
Road, rather
as not so, an
not but be
s well by re
ng the Coast
of Rivers the
unlo

unload themselves into the Sea; so that we were oblig'd to take a Resolution to return the same way that we came.

Before our Departure, having observ'd, that the Tree on which M. de la Salle had caus'd a Cross, with the Kings Arms to be set up, was ready to be thrown down by the boistroufness of the Winds and Waves, we got up a little higher, where having Erected a large Pillar, we fixt a Cross upon it, and underneath the Arms of France. We lodg'd that Night in the same place, but the next Morning being *Easter Monday, A. D. 1685.* we set forward on our Journey, travelling by Land along the Banks of the River *Mississipi.*

On the Sixth day, being arriv'd in the Country of the *Qinipissa's*; their Commander in Chief came to meet us, and having offer'd us the *Calumet*, begg'd pardon for their ill usage of us, during our last Voyage; entreating us that we would vouchsafe to admit 'em into the number of our Allies. However we answer'd their submissive Addresses very magisterially, and having refresh'd our selves a little

The Quinipissa's reconciled with the French.

Ouma's
Savage
People.

A strange
Beast.

little among 'em, we pursu'd our Journey. Four Leagues above, we discover'd in the Country a certain Nation, that had escap'd from us at our first Descent, I mean that of the *Ouma's*, who are the most valiant of all the Savages; altho' it be true indeed, that as soon as they saw us and our Arms, they were struck with a kind of Astonishment, accompanied with a panick Fear, that quite curb'd their fierceness, and oblig'd them to promise an entire Obedience to our Injunctions: They offer'd us some new Refreshments, and to serve us to the utmost of their power. In those Territories we observ'd an extraordinary rare Animal, that partakes of the nature of a Wolf and a Lion; as having the Head and size of a large Wolf, but the Tail and Claws of a Lion: He devours all sorts of Beasts, yet never sets upon Men: He sometimes carries his Prey on his Back, eats part of it, and hides the rest under the Leaves of Trees; but the other Animals have so great an Antipathy against this Beast, which is call'd *Michibichi*, that they never touch what he leaves.

Afte

Afte
Akance
are so
rich'd
that w
'em:
are of a
to be an
Soil be
great v
Fields
sorts o
Hound
huge v
thing t
Men ch
Climate
there;
was to
render
on, I r
quest.
of a Hou
ceas, an
Retinue
on the
License
to cultiv
grub up,
that this

alle.

pnrsu'd our
s above, we
y a certain
d from us
ean that of
most valiant
o' it be true
they saw us
struck with
accompani-
that quite
and oblig'd
e Obedience
hey offer'd
ments, and
most of their
ories we ob-
are Animal,
re of a Wolf
he Head and
the Tail and
devours all
er sets upon
ries his Prey
it, and hides
es of Trees;
ave so great
Beast, which
they never

After

M. De La Salle.

129

After the *Oumas* we met with the *Akanceas*. Indeed all these Countries are so pleasant, and so extremely enrich'd with the Productions of Nature, that we could not sufficiently admire 'em: The Trees in the Woods, which are of an extraordinary height, seem'd to be artificially planted in Rows: The Soil brings forth good Grain, with great variety of Fruit-Trees, and the Fields are every where stor'd with all sorts of Game, both for Hawk and Hound; but there is also abundance of huge wild Cats, which devour every thing that they can find. Our *French* Men charm'd with the Beauty of this Climate, desir'd leave of me to settle there; and forasmuch as our Intention was to civilize the Savages, and to render 'em sociable by our Conversation, I readily consented to their Request. Whereupon I made the Draught of a House for my self among the *Akanceas*, and left Ten *French* Men of my Retinue with Four Savages, to carry on the Building of it; granting 'em a License to lodge there themselves, and to cultivate as much Land as they could grub up, and clear of Trees: Inasmuch, that this small Colony was in Process
K of

Akanceas
a Nation.

of Time so extremely increas'd and improv'd, that it serves as a Place of Rendez-vous to the *French*, who travel into those Parts.

From thence I continu'd my Course along the River of the *Illinois*, and after Three Days Journey arriv'd at St. Lewis's Fort, on the Festival of St. John, being less tir'd with the Fatigues of my Travels, than perplexed about the Uncertainty of M. De La Salle's Destiny. Forasmuch as I had not as yet paid my Respects to our new Governour; after having pass'd some Days in refreshing my self, I left the *Illinois* in the end of the Month of June, and arriv'd at Montreal, July 15. Then I went forthwith to salute the Governour, and receiv'd Orders from him to cause the War against the *Iroquois* to be declar'd amongst our Allies, and to summon 'em to appear at St. Lewis's Fort, to carry on such an Expedition.

Having receiv'd this Commission, I soon took leave of Monsieur D'Enonville, and arriv'd in the Country of the *Illinois*, Septemb. 4. from whence I speedily dispatch'd divers Couriers from all Parts, to give notice to the Neighbouring Nations of our Design, and to ex-

Was declar'd against the Iroquois.

hort
of Re
Peopl
Mont
Illinoi
whole
400 M
Men
the Po
De Be
encam
of the
the wh
I decla
and th
ing 'em
to exer
the Inf
mon E
This
genera
wheret
at the
to the
of the
that Pl
Name
to defe
De la
of it, t

hor

increas'd and
as a Place of
, who travel

d my Course
inois, and af-
arriv'd at
Festival of St.
the Fatigues
plexed about

La Salle's De-
ad not as yet

new Gover-
d some Days
t the *Illinois*

of *June*, and
15. Then I

the Gover-
from him to

e *Iroquois* to
allies, and to

t *St. Lewis's*
Expedition.

ommission, I
eur *D'Enon-*

country of the
hence I spee-

riers from all
e Neighbour-

n, and to ex-
hor-

hort 'em to appear betimes at the place
of *Rendez-vous*. Whereupon all the
People met together in the end of the
Month of *March*, A. D. 1686. as well
Illinois, as *Chianous* and *Niamis*. The
whole Multitude consisted of about
400 Men; to whom I joyn'd 60 *French*
Men of my Company, leaving 40 in
the Fort under the Command of M.
De Bellefontaine. This small Army
encamp'd within a quarter of a League
of the Village; where having caused
the whole Body to stand to their Arms,
I declar'd to 'em the King's Pleasure,
and the Governour's Orders; exhort-
ing 'em to signalize their Valour, and
to exert their utmost Force, to repress
the Insolence of the *Iroquois*, our com-
mon Enemies.

This Speech was follow'd with the
general Acclamations of all the People;
whereupon I immediately put my self
at the Head of 'em, and began to march
to the Canal that joyns the two Lakes
of the *Surons* and the *Illinois*. In
that Place stands a Fort that bears the
Name of *St. Joseph*, and which serves
to defend those small Seas. *Monsieur*
De la Durantay was the Commander
of it, to whom I sent one of our *French-*

St. Joseph's
Fort.

Men to give him notice of our Arrival. Upon which Information he immediately commanded his Lieutenant to meet me with 30 Men, and the next day he himself led up the like number. Then we encamped on the Banks of that Streight, and Provisions were brought to us thither from all Parts. Two Days after *M. de la Foret*, Governour of the Fort of *Frontenac*, and *M. de Lude*, Commander of that of the *Miamis*, each at the Head of his Company march'd to joyn our Army. All the Forces being thus assembled, we held a Council of War, to consult what Measures ought to be taken, and it was determin'd, to divide the Army into two Bodies, one of which should be commanded by the *Sieurs de la Durontay*, and *de Lude*, to secure the Avenues of *Missilimachinac*, and to defend the Coasts of the Lake *Heriè*, as far as *Niagara*; where we design'd to erect a Fort, which was already begun to be built, to curb the *Iroquois*, who always made some Opposition on that side: And that *M. de la Foret* and my self should be Commanders of the other Body, to invade the Enemies Country.

The

The
thus c
march'
machin
Party
bove 5
quois, C
way, t
tain a
gag'd
and att
above h
spot; f
the rest
On o
Leagues
to mee
English,
under t
were c
Brandy,
Merchar
the *Iroqu*
after ha
the *Iroqu*
we seiz'
chandize
Slaves,
English
small Vi

The management of Affairs being thus dispos'd of, *M. de la Durontay* march'd along the Coasts of *Missilimachinac*, and met with a considerable Party of the Enemies, compos'd of above 500 Men, as well *English* as *Iroquois*, (here it may be observ'd by the way, that those two Nations maintain a strict mutual Amity, when engag'd together against the *French*) and attack'd 'em so vigorously, that above half of 'em were kill'd on the spot; some Prisoners were taken; and the rest were put to flight.

The English and Iroquois are united to make War with the French.

On our side, at the distance of 20 Leagues from *Niagara*, we found Means to meet with a numerous Party of *English*, *Iroquois*, and *Onabaches*, who under the Conduct of Major *Gregory*, were conveying a great quantity of Brandy, Provisions, Ammunition, and Merchandizes, to the Inhabitants of the *Iroquois*. We fell upon 'em; and after having kill'd the greatest part of the *Iroquois*, and of the other Savages, we seiz'd on their Baggages and Merchandizes, took a great number of Slaves, and carry'd away above 25 *English* Men Prisoners. After this small Victory we continued our March

e.
of our Arri-
ation he im-
s Lieutenant
and the next
e like num-
on the Banks
visions were
m all Parts.
oret, Gover-
ac, and M. de
of the Mia-
is Company
y. All the
ed, we held
onsult what
en, and it
ne Army in-
h should be
de la Duron-
the Avenues
defend the
far as Nia-
to erect a
egun to be
who always
that side:
nd my self
the other
s Country.

The

to *Niagara*, where we completed the Building of the Fort in sight of the *Iroquois*, and even at the very Foot of their Habitations.

The prosperous Success of our Arms in the beginning oblig'd us to send a Messenger to the Governour, to give him an Account of every thing that had pass'd, and *M. de la Foret*, who was very desirous to accept of this Commillion, set forward with all possible speed. *M. D'Enonville* receiv'd the Information with a great deal of Satisfaction; caus'd it to be communicated to the whole Continent of *Canada*; and sent us fresh Supplies of *Hurons*, *Plonontians* and *Ouatona's*; who came to meet us at the Rise of the Cataract, with a Bark very well mann'd.

Thus being re-enforc'd with these new Recruits, I march'd further into the Territories of the Enemies; but we entertain'd in our Camp a certain *Iroquois*, who feigning to be disgusted at the Proceedings of his own Nation, seem'd to be extremely well affected to ours; nevertheless this treacherous Renegado took an Opportunity to abandon us to return to the *Enemies Army*, and gave 'em notice of our March, as also of the

Marks

Marks
be cert
were c
we arr
rafs, at
from th
some o
ing ou
our M
Sub-Li
rally'd,
after h
their P
but no
'em, a
vance
into an
our sel
where
every

We
Place,
mand
rontay
day af
a mom
to for
being
Spies,

pleated the
 fight of the
 very Foot of
 of our Arms
 us to send a
 our, to give
 ing that had
 who was very
 Commilli-
 possible speed.
 e Informati-
 Satisfaction;
 ated to the
 la; and sent
 Plonontains
 to meet us
 act, with a
 with these
 further into
 ies; but we
 certain Iro-
 disgusted at
 v'n Nation,
 affected to
 cherous Re-
 to abandon
 my, and gave
 also of the
 Marks

Marks of our Savages, so as they might
 be certainly discover'd. Thus as we
 were continually advancing forward,
 we arriv'd on the other side of a Mo-
 rafs, at the distance of Three Leagues
 from the Camp of the *Iroquois*; where
 some of 'em lay in Ambush, expect-
 ing our Approach, and kill'd Seven of
 our Men, among whom was my
 Sub-Lieutenant: However we soon
 rally'd, repuls'd 'em vigorously, and
 after having cut off above Thirty of
 their Party, pursu'd 'em to the Woods;
 but not being able to come up with
 'em, and not judging it safe to ad-
 vance any further, lest we should fall
 into another Ambuscade, we contented
 our selves to plunder their Villages,
 where we put to the Edge of the Sword
 every one whom we met in our
 way.

We encamped for some Days in that
 Place, and the Army under the Com-
 mand of *M. de Lude* and *M. de la Du-
 rontay* came to joyn ours. The next
 day after their Arrival we did not stay
 a moment, e're we took a Resolution
 to force the Enemies Camp; who
 being inform'd of our Design, by their
 Spies, did not think fit to wait for our

Approach, but decamp'd with great Precipitation. We found in their Camp some Remainders of *Indian* Corn, and other Provisions, which we made use of to our Advantage, and we spent the Night in their Tents, or rather Huts; the Season being already very far advanc'd. The next Morning we sent back all our Allies to their several Territories, with Orders to meet together again upon the first Summons; while the *Sieurs de la Lude* and *de la Dumontay* repair'd to their Respective Stations.

As I was marching to mine, I met with certain *Hurons*, who gave me to understand, that I was ready to be surrounded with the whole Army of the *Iroquois*. There was no longer any Means to have recourse to *M. de Lude*, and *de la Dumontay*, who were already embark'd in Canoes on the Lakes; insomuch, that I was oblig'd to cause my small Band of Men to halt, and instantly to dispatch a Courier to *Niagara* to demand speedy Succours of the Commander of the new Fort. It happen'd accidentally, that *M. de la Valromè*, the Governour of it, supposing us to be engag'd with the *Iroquois*, was leading up Fifty Fusileers to our Relief, and

lle.

d with great
nd in their
f *Indian* Corn,
ich we made
and we spent
s, or rather
eady very far
rning we sent
r several Ter-
meet together
ons; while
de la *Durontay*
Stations.
mine, I met
gave me to
dy to be sur-
Army of the
longer any
o *M. de Lude*,
ere already
the Lakes;
g'd to cause
o halt, and
rier to *Nia-*
cours of the
rt. It hap-
M. de la Val-
supposing
roquois, was
our Relief,
and

M. De La Salle.

137

and in the mean while the Messenger
whom I sent, having met with him,
inform'd him of our present Distress,
which caus'd him to hasten his March:
His Arrival inspir'd us with new Cou-
rage, so that the Enemies appearing,
we set our small Army in Battel-array;
yet when we had advanced towards
em within Musket-shot, they had
not the Courage to stay for our com-
ing up, but suddenly turn'd their Backs
upon us: Whereupon we pursued 'em
for some time, till about 100 of them
perish'd on the spot, and the rest found
Means to escape into the Woods. Then
immediately caus'd a Retreat to be
ounded; and having convoy'd *M. de*
Alromè on part of his way, I judg'd
expedient to take up our Winter-
quarters at *Missilimachinac*, and to re-
de there till the next Campaign, in
ase the War should continue.

The Scene of Affairs began now to be The Iro-
rang'd; for the *Iroquois* resign'd to us quois
their Habitations that were near *Niaga-* forc'd to
submit.
; made a Present of their best Skins
to the Governour; and engag'd that for
the future they should not disturb the
tranquillity of the Nations that were
nder our Protection, and who were
our

our Allies. A Treaty of Peace being thus concluded, I set forward in my Journey to the Country of the *Illinois* in the Month of *April*, 1687. and should have been very well satisfied with the Success of the Campaign, if I had not been continually troubled, by reason of *M. De la Salle's* long Absence, not knowing what might have befallen him. For he set out from *America*, A.D. 1683, and we did so in 1687. so that Four Years were almost past, without having any other News of him, than that of his re-embarking, or his Departure from *Rochel* for the Gulph of *Mexico*, but without getting the least Information concerning his Return. Indeed I knew not what to think. *Did he not perish* (said I to my self) *by Shipwreck, or rather did he not land on some Coast, inhabited by Barbarians, who perhaps might have dispatch'd him out of the way?* Thus being perplex'd with such distracting Thoughts, I could take no Rest, neither could I Steer any certain Course, but suffering my self to be conducted by my Attendants, rather than leading 'em my self, I arriv'd at *St. Lewis's* Fort in the end of the Month of *May*.

As t
was ext
with M
Brother
in his C
ly Air, v
Meeting
Interval o
Transpo
me to r
niently
ame ti
Brother
he appe
land;
men, a c
which h
self, we
omens;
conceal
had rec
me very
his Bro
but tha
tion ha
that he
nue his
small V
trading
whom

As soon as I enter'd my House, I was extremely surpriz'd, there to meet with *M. Cavelier*, *M. De La Salle's* own Brother, and indeed, I did not discern in his Countenance that free and sprightly Air, which usually appears at the first Meeting of two Friends, after a long Interval of Separation : However, the first Transports of my Joy, not permitting me to make long Reflections, I incontinently embrac'd him, and at the same time enquir'd of him about his Brother's Welfare. Upon this Address, he appear'd to be altogether put to a stand ; so that a sad Look up to Heaven, a deep Sigh, and a certain Effort, which he seem'd to make within himself, were taken by me as so many ill Omens ; I earnestly entreated him to conceal nothing from me, and after he had recover'd himself a little, he told me very positively, ' That *M. de la Salle* his Brother was in perfect Health ; but that the ill Success of his Navigation had so far pull'd down his Spirits, that he had scarce Courage to continue his Course ; that in returning by small Voyages, he took delight in trading with the different Nations, whom he met with ; and that ha-

ving

‘ving charg’d him to go before, to
 ‘give me notice of his Arrival, he de-
 ‘termin’d still to reside among the *Na-*
 ‘*ches* and *Akanceas* for some time, to
 ‘purchase certain Merchandizes of both
 ‘those Nations.

The Assurance, with which he
 spoke to me, joyn’d with a Shew of
 downright Integrity, which was na-
 tural to him, besides the Deference due
 to a Person of his Character; for he
 was a Priest, would not suffer me in
 the least to call in Question the vera-
 city of his Relation, and serv’d a lit-
 tle to encourage me against my sad
 Presages. Therefore I entreated him
 to give me an Account of his Voyage,
 and to let me know when they re-em-
 bark’d, and at what time they landed.
 Since then I gave him a great deal of
 Scope, to deliver his Mind ingenuously,
 and without Constraint, he began to
 relate the particular Circumstances
 with so much the more Freedom.

He told me at first, ‘That the whole
 ‘Court of *France*, being charm’d with
 ‘the great Discoveries made by *M. de*
 ‘*la Salle*, the King made no scruple at
 ‘all to grant him the Supplies he de-
 ‘sir’d; not to mention the Titles of

‘Ho-

Hono
 Autho
 That
 24. A
 very v
 cessary
 Soldie
 Trade
 Comp
 whole
 Boats,
 sons, t
 who fe
 ther du
 Forafr
 Crosses a
 ould no
 be inf
 their
 velier
 ve from
 ation, to
 which c
 the Lat
 were suc
 ent Sto
 their Ship
 o the val
 livres,
 urious B

Honour, that procur'd him greater Authority in his new Plantations: That they set out from *France*, July 24. *A. D.* 1684. with four Vessels, very well provided of all things necessary, and above 200 Men, as well Soldiers as Artificers of all sorts of Trades, and that nevertheless by a Complication of Misfortunes, their whole Fleet was reduc'd to a few Boats, and that great number of Persons, to Seven or Eight *French Men*, who serv'd as a Convoy to his Brother during his Return.

Forasmuch as these Remarkable Crosses afforded Matter of Wonder, I could not choose but be very desirous to be inform'd of all the Particulars of their Adventures: Whereupon *M. Belier* resum'g his former Narrative from the beginning of their Navigation, told me, ' That after a Calm which continued for some Days, in the Latitude of *St. Domingo*, they were suddenly surpriz'd with a violent Storm; insomuch, that one of their Ships, laden with Merchandizes, to the value of above Thirty Thousand *Livres*, was hurry'd away with a furious Blast of Wind, and afterwards

' taken

† *Pirogues.* taken by certain *Spanish* † *Rovers* de la
 ' That the rest of the Fleet cast Anchor degra
 ' before the same Island, where the the I
 ' were soon refitted, and supply'd with to av
 ' fresh Provisions, which with the Me great
 ' chandizes there bought, serv'd for the land
 ' Cargo of these Vessels, but that the Leagu
 ' greatest part of the Mariners, by for:
 ' ving somewhat too licentiouslly, com discov
 ' tracted very dangerous Diseases. Ships
 ' That they cruiz'd about from then to ste
 ' towards the Islands of *Caimant*, an Rocks
 ' took in fresh Water on that of *Cuba* riv'd
 ' where, having found many Tun afterw
 ' Canary, good Brandy, Sugar, an St. Len
 ' *Indian* Corn left unguarded, the venier
 ' seiz'd on the whole Cargo, and g tis da
 ' such Reprisals as were sufficient by re
 ' make 'em amends for the loss of eve encom
 ' thing that the *Spaniards* had tak which
 ' from them before: That afterwar Ind
 ' being supply'd with all manner of the
 ' Provisions, they set Sail again; have b
 ' that having always had a favourab for afte
 ' Gale of Wind, they would have e Mouth
 ' ter'd the Gulph of *Mexico*; but th to desc
 ' perceiving the Currents to be ve wards
 ' rapid, and the Shelves to be num to forr
 ' rous, they were oblig'd to stand vent M
 ' from the Shoar, which hinder'd ven to

ish † Rover
 et cast Anche
 l, where the
 supply'd wit
 with the Mer
 serv'd for th
 but that th
 ariners, by
 entiously, co
 Diseases.

out from then
 Caimant, an
 that of Cuba
 many Tuns
 , Sugar, an
 guarded, tha
 argo, and g
 e sufficient
 he los of eve
 rds had tak
 at afterwar
 all manner
 il again; an
 ad a favourab
 ould have e
 ico; but th
 ts to be ve
 s to be num
 d to stand
 n hinder'd

de la Salle from lighting on the exact
 degree of Latitude, for the Mouth of
 the River *Mississipi*; insomuch, that
 to avoid the exposing of the Men to
 greater Dangers, he order'd 'em to
 land at the Bay of *Spiritu Santo*, 50
 Leagues below the River they sought
 for: But two Days after, hoping to
 discover it, they got on Board their
 Ships again, and always taking care
 to steer into the Main, to shun the
 Rocks and Shelves, they at last ar-
 riv'd a great deal higher in a Bay,
 afterwards known by the name of
St. Lewis. This Bay is of a very con-
 venient Depth for a Harbour; but
 'tis dangerous landing there, as well
 by reason of the Shelves of Sand that
 encompass it; as for the Rocks with
 which 'tis beset on all sides.

Indeed the missing of the Entrance
 of the River (continued he) would
 have been no great Detriment to us;
 for after having once arriv'd so near its
 Mouth, it would have been difficult
 to descry it, at least by Land; after-
 wards to convey our Ships thither;
 to form a kind of Harbour, to pre-
 vent Mistakes for the future; and e-
 ven to build a regular Port; but ill
 Luck

' Luck would have it, that after *M. de*
 ' *Beaujeu*, who commanded one of the
 ' three Vessels, was come on Board our
 ' Ship; the two others were lost, as
 ' well by the ill Management of the
 ' Pilot, as by the Carelesness of the
 ' Mariners; for the first ran upon a
 ' shelf of Sand in the Mouth of the
 ' Bay, from whence it was impossible
 ' to get her off, notwithstanding our
 ' utmost Endeavours; altho' indeed
 ' we were so fortunate as to save the
 ' Men, and the best of our Effects. The
 ' other Ship was dash'd in pieces a-
 ' gainst a Rock, even in the very Har-
 ' bour, with the loss of the most part
 ' of the Mariners; but we had luc-
 ' kily unloaded it of all our Pro-
 ' visions and Merchandizes: Besides,
 ' that the greatest part of our Compa-
 ' ny and Goods were set ashore by *M.*
 ' *de Beaujeu*, who after having been a
 ' Witness of our Misfortunes, set Sail
 ' to return for *France*.

M. Cavalier having thus related the
 Disasters that besel their Fleet, pro-
 ceeded to give the following Narration
 of the other Adventures and Occurren-
 ces that happen'd during their Voyage.
 ' To reckon (*said he*) from July 24

A. D.

' A. D.
 ' ture fi
 ' next Y
 ' at St.
 ' were p
 ' having
 ' ments
 ' ving
 ' tuatio
 ' a very
 ' Cows,
 ' that t
 ' a great
 ' and th
 ' the ena
 ' Abund
 ' rous H
 ' duc'd t
 ' for him
 ' first ma
 ' delineat
 ' Orders
 ' his Des
 ' the nec
 ' ments
 ' ency of
 ' ter con
 ' on of th
 ' ly com
 ' Two M

after M. de
 one of the
 Board our
 were lost, as
 ent of the
 ess of the
 an upon a
 outh of the
 impossible
 anding our
 ho' indeed
 o save the
 ffects. The
 n pieces a-
 very Har-
 most part
 e had luc-
 our Pro-
 s: Besides,
 ur Compa-
 hoar by M.
 ing been a
 es, set Sail
 related the
 Fleet, pro-
 Narration
 Occurren-
 air Voyage
 n July 24
 A. D.

A. D. 1684. the Day of our Departure from *Rochel*, to Feb. 18. in the next Year 1685. when we disimbark'd at *St. Lewis's Bay*, about Seven Months were pass'd; at what time my Brother having gather'd together the Fragments of our Vessels, and after having discover'd the advantageous Situation of the Country at the Mouth of a very fine River, call'd *the River of Cows*, in the midst of many others that fall into the same Bay, with a great number of populous Nations, and the delightful Prospects caus'd by the enamell'd Verdure of the Lands, the Abundance of Fruit, and the numerous Herds of Cattle, was soon induc'd to cause a fine Seat to be built for himself in these Parts; having at first made the Draught of a Fort, and delineated the Compass of it; giving Orders at the same time for putting his Design in Execution: And indeed, the necessity of building some Apartments for Lodging, and the convenience of procuring Timber and Morter contributed so far to the carrying on of the Work, that it was entirely completed within the space of Two Months.

The River of Cows.

' In the mean while, *M. de la Salle*
 ' growing more impatient than ever
 ' to recover the River of *Mississipi*, made
 ' Incurfions on all fides to defcry it.
 ' Forasmuch as that whole Country
 ' is divided by a great number of Ri-
 ' vers that empty themselves at divers
 ' Intervals into the Bay ; he fometimes
 ' travell'd by Land, and fometimes in a
 ' Canoo, accompanied with Ten or
 ' Twelve *French Men*, arm'd with good
 ' Fufees: At every one of thofe Di-
 ' ftances he met with feveral Habita-
 ' tions of the Savages, and every where
 ' abundance of all forts of neceffary Pro-
 ' vifions, even fo much as tame Fowl.

' At laft after Fifteen Days fearch
 ' he met with a fpacious River, and
 ' follow'd the Courfe of it for Seven or
 ' Eight Leagues to the Place, where it
 ' rolls into the Sea, and perceiv'd it to
 ' be really that which he had fo long
 ' fought for, and the Mouth of which
 ' he was not able to difcover: There-
 ' fore he took an Obfervation of its La-
 ' titude again, that he might not mifs it,
 ' in cafe he fhould have occafion to pafs
 ' thro' the Gulph at any other time. Thus
 ' being well fatisfied with this Discove-
 ' ry, and yet more delighted with the

Fruit-

Fruitfu
 ries, he
 out as a
 fortune
 his Men
 thofe li
 had con
 that ab
 rated b
 remely
 out hav
 mode
 that wer
 did not
 em, and
 that by t
 ual Cor
 efponde
 night m
 that Na
 bundanc
 ' Since
 ries app
 o many
 regard t
 fustain f
 ount, in
 that was
 favour'd
 he Hopo

de la Salle
 than ever
 Missipi, made
 descry it.
 e Country
 ber of Ri-
 s at divers
 sometimes
 etimes in a
 h Ten or
 with good
 those Di-
 al Habita-
 very where
 necessary Pro-
 me Fowl.
 says searh
 River, and
 or Seven or
 , where it
 ceiv'd it to
 ad so long
 n of which
 r: There-
 n of its La-
 not miss it,
 sion to pass
 ime. Thus
 is Discove-
 d with the
 Fruit-

Fruitfulness of the adjacent Territo-
 ries, he return'd to his new Colony;
 but as an addition to his former Mis-
 fortunes, he soon found that some of
 his Men died, quite worn out with
 those lingering Diseases, which they
 had contracted at St. Domingo, and
 that above Forty of them were assassi-
 nated by the Savages. He was ex-
 tremely afflicted at so great a loss;
 but having fortify'd himself against
 immoderate Grief, he summon'd those
 that were left (the number of whom
 did not amount to 100) encourag'd
 'em, and exhorted 'em to take care
 that by the Means of their Labour, mu-
 tual Concord, Industry and good Cor-
 respondence with the *Barbarians*, they
 might make Advantage of the Riches
 that Nature afforded 'em, in great
 abundance.

Since the newly discover'd Coun-
 tries appear'd to *M. de la Salle*, to be
 so many conquer'd Provinces; and in
 regard that all the Losses he might
 sustain seem'd to him to be of no ac-
 count, in comparison of one Nation,
 that was voluntarily subdu'd; he en-
 deavour'd to comfort himself with
 the Hopes of better Success in the Un-
 dertaking

'dertaking of some other Voyages, and
 'thus having taken a new Resolution
 'he determin'd to discover those va
 'Territories which are situated betwe
 'the River *Mississipi*, and the Gulph
 'Mexico, to the South-east. On the 22
 'Day of *April*, 1685. he set out from S
 'Lewis's Bay for this new Voyage, tak
 'ing along with him only Twent
 'Persons, among whom were our tw
 'Nephews, *Cavelier* and *De Morange*
 'a Father of the Order of *Recolet* an
 'my self. Our whole Equipage con
 'sisted only in two Canoes, and
 'many Sledges to carry our Provision
 'and Merchandizes.
 'On the first Day we pass'd above
 'Rivers, the Territories lying round
 'about which, appear'd to us to be
 'it were an enchanted Country, and
 'conversed with a very obliging sort
 'People, who deny'd us nothing. 'T
 'also remarkable that in those Parts
 'mong the horned Beasts, in the Me
 'dows we saw a great number of Ho
 'ses: but so wild, that one cannot
 'come near 'em.
 'On the second Day, we began to ge
 'our living by hunting; we kill'd
 'Roe-Buck, and lay that Night, in the o

open Fields, in the middle of a small
Retrenchment: Ever since that time
we made an Agreement to use the
like Precaution in every Place, where
we should have occasion to take up
our Lodging.

On the third Day, about Noon, we
met with Four Booted Horse-men,
who accosted us in a very respectful
manner, asking us who we were, and
where we were going? We declar'd
to 'em, that we were *French Men*,
and we were only Travelling through
those Countries, with a Design to dis-
cover the several Nations of *America*,
and to offer 'em the Protection of the
King of the *French*, one of the greatest
Monarchs in the Universe: And that
if they were willing to submit to his
Power, they should soon be sensible
of the Effects of his Favour, by the
means of his numerous Fleet: They
on the other side immediately entreat-
ed us to accept of a Lodging in their
Cottages, and to accompany 'em to
their Village: We readily consented
to their Request, and were very
kindly entertain'd by them.

*The Meet-
ing of four
Booted
Horsemen.*

Quoquis
a Nation
of the Sa-
vages.

This was the Nation of the Quoquis
or Mahis: The Men are of a ve
swarthy Complexion, neither are t
Women more fair; they have ve
fine black Hair; their Eyes bei
also black, their Face and Nose fl
and their Teeth very white: Oth
wife, their Carriage is free and un
fected. The Men in those Parts
cloath'd with Corsets of double L
ther, which are Arrow-proof; we
ing from the Waste to the Kne
kind of Pantaloon Breeches, made
the Skin of a Bear, Stag, or W
and their Head is cover'd with a
of Turban of the same Skins: Th
have also Boots or Buskins of the Sk
of an Ox, Elk or Horse, very ar
cially dress'd. For the Horse-Fur
ture, besides their Corsets, Busk
and Bucklers, cover'd with the ha
est Skins; they have Saddles made
many pieces of Leather, fitted
glu'd one upon another; as a
Wooden Stirrups; Bridles like o
and Bits made of the Teeth of a B
or Wolf. As for their Women, t
wear instead of a Bonnet a Context
of Rushes or Reeds, of divers Col
their Hair being sometimes brai

Their Wo-
men.

of the *Quoag*
 are of a ve
 neither are t
 they have ve
 their Eyes bei
 and Nose fl
 white: Oth
 s free and un
 those Parts
 of double L
 w-proof; we
 to the Kne
 eches, made
 Stag, or W
 er'd with a
 e Skins: Th
 rns of the Sk
 rse; very ar
 ne Horse-Fu
 orslets, Busk
 with the ha
 addles made
 ner, fitted
 other; as
 idles like o
 Teeth of a B
 Women, t
 et a Context
 divers Colo
 etimes brai

‘ and sometimes tied in Knots: Their
 ‘ Body is cover’d with a Vest of very
 ‘ fine Wool, reaching half way down
 ‘ their Thighs: They are shod almost
 ‘ after the same manner as the Men,
 ‘ and wear Buskins on their Legs.

‘ We only lodg’d with ’em one Night,
 ‘ but always stood upon our Guard,
 ‘ watching by Turns from time to time.
 ‘ The next day, the chief Commander
 ‘ came to meet us with certain Presents,
 ‘ as *Indian Corn*, and to assure us, &c. That
 ‘ they should be always very willing to
 ‘ keep an amicable Correspondence
 ‘ with us, and to live under the Laws
 ‘ of that Prince, whom we acknow-
 ‘ ledged: On the other side we made
 ‘ ’em a Present of some Knives, with
 ‘ Glasses, and other Toys, for their
 ‘ Wives; after which we took Leave
 ‘ of ’em, and continu’d our Journey.

‘ About Two Leagues from thence
 ‘ we found our selves on the Banks of
 ‘ a very fine River, which we call’d
 ‘ *Riber* from one of our Retinue, so Riber Ri-
 ver, why
 so call’d.
 ‘ nam’d, who was drown’d therein.
 ‘ There were numerous Herds of *Cibo-
 las*, feeding along the sides of this
 ‘ River, of which we instantly kill’d
 ‘ three, and caus’d ’em to be * salted, Boucaner

The River
Hiens.

Biscaton-
ges, a Na-
tion of the
Savages,
surnamed
Weepers.

‘ to serve for our Provision. At the
‘ distance of a League from the same
‘ River we got up another, that is more
‘ rapid, and on which we imposed the
‘ name of *Hiens*, from that of a certain
‘ *German* of our Company, who con-
‘ tinued Three Days lost thereabouts,
‘ having ventured to go too far into
‘ the Woods, by reason of the great
‘ Delight he took in hunting.

‘ Thus in pursuing our Journey,
‘ sometimes in the Plains, and some-
‘ times across the Torrents and Rivers
‘ which we pass’d in our Canoos, we
‘ arriv’d in the midst of a very extra-
‘ ordinary Nation, call’d the *Bisca-*
‘ *tonges*, to whom we gave the
‘ Name of Weepers, in regard that
‘ upon the first Approach of Strangers,
‘ all these People, as well Men as Wo-
‘ men, usually fall a weeping bitterly:
‘ The reason of their Practice is very
‘ particular; for these poor People i-
‘ magining that their Relations or
‘ Friends deceased are gone a Journey,
‘ and continually expecting their return;
‘ the remembrance of ’em is reviv’d
‘ upon the Arrival of new Passengers;
‘ but forasmuch as they do not find
‘ in their Persons those whose Loss
‘ they

they lament, it serves only to encrease
 their Griet. That which is yet more
 remarkable, and perhaps even very
 reasonable in that Custom, is, that
 they weep much more at the Birth
 of their Children, than at their Deaths;
 because the latter is esteem'd only by
 them as it were a Journey or Voyage,
 from whence they may return after
 the Expiration of a certain time; but
 they look upon their Nativity, as an
 Inlet into an Ocean of Dangers and
 Misfortunes. Let the case be how it
 will, this first Torrent of Tears be-
 ing once over, nothing was to be seen
 among the whole Multitude of these
 People, but a serene Aspect, and an
 engaging Air, full of Kindness and
 Respect: They conducted us into their
 Huts that were neatly matted, where
 they offer'd us some powder'd Beef and
 Venison, with some *Sagavite*, their
 ordinary Bread; which they make
 with a certain Root, call'd *Toquo*, be-
 ing a kind of Bramble. After having
 wash'd, dry'd, and beaten it to Pow-
 der, they make it up into a Paste;
 which being bak'd, is of a very good
 taste, but of an Astringent Quality.
 We added to their Treat a little of our
 Brandy,

Sagavite,
a sort of
Bread.

' Brandy, and gave 'em a Couple
 ' Bottles full of that Liquor : Whereup
 ' on they made us a Present of divers
 ' Skins, well dress'd, which serv'd
 ' make us good Shoes. These Peop
 ' worship no other Deity but the Sun
 ' and that is the peculiar God of almo
 ' all those Nations : Upon which occ
 ' sion we told 'em, That our Prince w
 ' the Sun of other Kings ; that his Lust
 ' was spread abroad throughout
 ' whole Continent of *Europe*, and ev
 ' in divers Parts of *America* : That
 ' they would submit to his Authori
 ' they should ere long be sensible
 ' some of the Effects of his Grande
 ' and Generosity. Whereupon th
 ' readily submitted, and took an O
 ' to maintain a mutual Friendship w
 ' us for ever.

' Having spent two Days among t
 ' weeping Nation, we set forward
 ' gain in our Journey. On the
 ' Day we travell'd Ten large Leag
 ' almost continually in the Wor
 ' and afterwards we arriv'd wit
 ' sight of a great Village, in the
 ' trance of which we espy a h
 ' Roe-Buck, which a *Chauvanzous* of
 ' Retinue, aim'd at, and kill'd with

a Couple
 or: Whereup
 esent of diver
 which serv'd
 These Peop
 y but the Su
 r God of almo
 on which occ
 our Prince w
 that his Lust
 throughout
 Europe, and ev
 America: That
 o his Authori
 be sensible
 f his Grande
 hereupon th
 d took an O
 Friendship w

Days amongt
 e set forward
 y. On the
 n large Leag
 in the Woo
 arriv'd wit
 llage, in the
 e espy a h
 Chaouanous of
 d kill'd with

M. De La Salle.

155

‘ Fufee-shot. The Report of the Gun,
 ‘ and the Flame that accompany’d it
 ‘ appear’d so dreadful to those Inhabi-
 ‘ tants, that at the very sight of our Com-
 ‘ pany and Arms, they were all ex-
 ‘ tremely terrify’d, and betook them-
 ‘ selves to flight. The chief Comman-
 ‘ der, and three of his Sons, having
 ‘ shew’d more Resolution, brought ’em
 ‘ out of their Panick Fear; so that they
 ‘ advanc’d towards us, to offer us
 ‘ some Refreshment; and the use of
 ‘ some of their Huts for our Lodging,
 ‘ during the Night. But my Brother
 ‘ not judging it convenient to trust ’em,
 ‘ we took up our Quarters a little fur-
 ‘ ther off, according to our usual Cu-
 ‘ stom. It was well for us that we
 ‘ were so cautious; for the next Morn-
 ‘ ing, at break of day, we discern’d a
 ‘ great number of that Rabble, lying
 ‘ in Ambush among the Reeds, and
 ‘ arm’d with Bows and Arrows. M.
 ‘ De la Salle immediately caus’d ’em to
 ‘ be rudely attack’d, and oblig’d ’em to
 ‘ call for Quarter. But they were re-
 ‘ leased for a certain quantity of *Indian*
 ‘ Corn, which the Son of their Com-
 ‘ mander brought to us, and we im-
 ‘ mediately took a resolution to decamp.

*A Fufee
 let off,
 strikes a
 Terror into
 the Minds
 of the Sa-
 vagas.*

‘ At

The Chi-
nonoas
know how
to distin-
guish the
French
from the
Spaniards.

‘ At the distance of six Leagues from
‘ thence we came to another Village,
‘ consisting of above 300 Huts, inhabi-
‘ ted by the *Chinonoas*, who receiv’d us
‘ very favourably. All these Countries
‘ are situated almost on the Eastern
‘ Coast of the Sea of *Mexico*; so that the
‘ *Spaniards* frequently make Inrodes in-
‘ to them, and abuse the Natives after
‘ a most outrageous manner: Infomuch
‘ that these Savages knew how to di-
‘ stinguish us from them, by the Air of
‘ our Countenance, our Language and
‘ Deportment; and the Antipathy they
‘ had against all those of that Nation,
‘ serv’d only to encrease their Friendship
‘ and Kindness towards us.

‘ We soon gave ’em to understand,
‘ that there was no manner of Corre-
‘ spondence between the *Spaniards* and
‘ us, and that they were our declar’d
‘ Enemies: Whereupon having offer’d
‘ us every thing that was in their Pos-
‘ session, they entreated us to unite with
‘ them, in order to maintain a vigorous
‘ War against the *Spanish* Nation:
‘ We reply’d, That we were not at pre-
‘ sent in a condition to do it, but that
‘ we would speedily return, with great-
‘ er numbers to assist ’em, infomuch,
‘ that

‘ that
‘ peac
‘ depa
‘ great
‘ fine
‘ W
‘ the
‘ our
‘ by a
‘ deou
‘ half a
‘ swell
‘ over
‘ large
‘ bathin
‘ Viper
‘ so th
‘ sectly
‘ Th
‘ and at
‘ on the
‘ It wa
‘ were
‘ those v
‘ leaky,
‘ on al
‘ to leav
‘ viceab
‘ find n
‘ a * li

' that having spent the Night very
 ' peaceably among those People, we
 ' departed the next day, laden with a
 ' great deal of *Indian Corn*, and very
 ' fine Skins.

' We had scarce march'd a League on
 ' the Road, when a certain Person of
 ' our Company found himself stung
 ' by a Viper, and suddenly made a hi- A Man
 ' deous Outcry : Within less space than stung by a
 ' half a quarter of an Hour, his Body Viper.
 ' swell'd prodigiously, and became all
 ' over livid. We immediately made
 ' large Incisions on the part affected,
 ' bathing it with Brandy and Salt of
 ' Vipers, and gave him some *Orvietan*;
 ' so that after Two Days he was per-
 ' fectly cur'd.

' Then we continu'd our Journey, The Pas-
 ' and after Two Days march we arriv'd sage over
 ' on the Banks of a very rapid River : a rapid
 ' It was requisite to pass it, and we River.
 ' were then destitute of Canoos ; for
 ' those we made use of before were so
 ' leaky, that they took in Water
 ' on all sides, and we were forc'd
 ' to leave 'em, as being no longer ser-
 ' viceable to us. Therefore we could
 ' find no other Expedient, but to make
 ' a * little Boat of Canes, and many Canes.
 ' Twigs

' Twigs of Trees, twisted one within
 ' another, and cover'd with our best
 ' Skins. My Brother and our two Ne-
 ' phews first went on board with two
 ' Savages to steer it, whilst I stay'd
 ' with the rest of our Company on the
 ' side of the River. They were scarce
 ' got into the middle of the Current,
 ' when the Swiftness of the Stream hur-
 ' ry'd 'em away in a moment, and took
 ' 'em out of our sight: But by singular
 ' good Luck the Boat was stopt about
 ' half a large League from thence, by a
 ' great Tree that floated on the Water,
 ' being half pluck'd up by the Roots;
 ' so that grappling the Branches, by
 ' the means of certain Poles, they at
 ' last made a shift to get over to the o-
 ' ther side, otherwise the extreme Swift-
 ' ness of the River would undoubtedly
 ' have carry'd 'em into the Sea.

' In the mean while, we were very fol-
 ' licitous to know what was become of
 ' 'em; we incessantly follow'd the
 ' Course of our Bank, looking forward
 ' as far as possibly we could, and cry-
 ' ing out with all our force to endea-
 ' vour to recall, or to discover 'em. We
 ' spent a whole Day and a Night in this
 ' Anxiety, and the next Day we began

' the

the fa
 answer
 the oth
 sary to
 were
 to t
 fore w
 new E
 ed, an
 any t
 strong
 veral t
 could b
 pany b
 our Co
 Brothe
 to stee
 mean v
 ling t
 him a
 Mornin
 with t
 kill'd a
 left it a
 of a L
 ing giv
 attende
 the oth
 feasted
 nison, a
 vision.

one within
th our best
ur two Ne-
d with two
st I stay'd
any on the
were scarce
ne Current,
Stream hur-
t, and took
by singular
stopt about
hence, by a
the Water,
the Roots;
anches, by
es, they at
er to the o-
reme Swift-
undoubtedly
Sea.

ere very sol-
as become of
ollow'd the
ing forward
ld, and cry-
e to endea-
er 'em. We
Night in this
ay we began

' the

the same Toil again, till at last they
answer'd us, and we descry'd 'em on
the other side. 'Twas absolutely neces-
sary to joyn 'em, and to that end we
'were forc'd to expose our selves
to the same Danger. There-
fore we set about the making of a
new Boat, (for the first was unjoynt-
ed, and no longer capable of holding
any thing) and having provided
strong Poles, we all pass'd over at se-
veral times, with as much safety as
could be wish'd for. Our whole Com-
pany being thus re united, we pursu'd
our Course under the Conduct of my
Brother, who had no other Compass
to steer by than his Genius. In the
mean while one of our Hunters strag-
gling to follow the Game, we lost
him a whole Day. But the next
Morning, we saw him again laden
with two Roe-Bucks: He had also
kill'd another at the same time, and
left it at the Distance of half a quarter
of a League: Therefore, after hav-
ing given us the two, he went back,
attended with an *Abenaguis*, to fetch
the other, and having brought it, we
feasted our selves with part of his Ve-
nison, and kept the rest for our Pro-
vision.

' Hav-

*A Savage
on Horse-
back de-
mands who
we are.*

‘ Having pass’d from thence into the
‘ most delightful and most populous
‘ Countries of all the others, after a
‘ March of Six or Seven Leagues, we
‘ saw making up towards us a certain
‘ Savage on Horse-back, with his Wife
‘ behind him, attended with four Slaves
‘ who were well mounted. This Man
‘ accosting us, enquir’d who we were
‘ and what we sought for in that Coun-
‘ try? My Brother gave him to
‘ understand, as well by his own
‘ Mouth, as by that of the Savages of
‘ his Retinue, that we were *French*
‘ Men, and that our Design was only
‘ to offer to all the People of their Con-
‘ tinent, as far as the Gulph of *Mexico*
‘ our Alliance, and the Protection of
‘ the King of *France*. Whereupon the
‘ same Savage immediately alighted
‘ presented his Horse to my Brother
‘ and even constrain’d him by his ear-
‘ nest Entreaties to accept of it, and to
‘ go to the Place of their Habitation
‘ assuring him, that he should be very
‘ welcome, and that his Proposal
‘ should be favourably heard. My
‘ Brother, after having return’d him
‘ many Thanks for his Kindness, told
‘ him, that before he proceeded so far
‘ he

‘ he wo
‘ of the
‘ an En
‘ pose.
‘ swer v
‘ plusag
‘ one of
‘ Brothe
‘ his Ne
‘ nous.
‘ Horse
‘ Slaves,
‘ that w
‘ The m
‘ with o
‘ ted on
‘ sorts o
‘ port n
‘ ing, of
‘ had rec
‘ are call
‘ bitation
‘ pass, an
‘ tuated n
‘ are 40
‘ of thick
‘ meeting
‘ form a
‘ inside of
‘ ways ke
‘ tion.

he would very willingly be inform'd
 of the Opinion of his whole Nation, by
 an Envoy, sent to them to that pur-
 pose. The Savage receiv'd this An-
 swer very favourably, and by a Sur-
 plusage of Civility left his Wife and
 one of his Slaves for Hostages: My
 Brother on the other side gave him
 his Nephew *Cavelier* and two *Chacua-*
nous. The Savage mounted on a
 Horse that belong'd to one of his
 Slaves, and my Nephew *Cavelier* on
 that which was given my Brother.
 The next Day our Envoy return'd
 with our two *Chacuanous*, both moun-
 ted on fine Horses, laden with all
 sorts of Provisions, and made a Re-
 port no less agreeable than surpriz-
 ing, of the kind Entertainment he
 had receiv'd from those People, who
 are call'd *Cenis*. The place of their Ha-
 bitation is extended 20 Leagues in com-
 pass, and divided into many Hamlets, si-
 tuated near one another. Their *Cottages*
 are 40 or 50 Foot high, being made
 of thick Branches of Trees, which
 meeting together in a point at the top,
 form a kind of arched Roof; the
 inside of 'em is well matted, and al-
 ways kept very neat, even to Admira-
 tion.

M

M.

*Cenis, a
 Nation of
 the Sava-*

' *M. de La Salle* being inform'd of
 ' their good Intentions, did not fail to
 ' convey himself thither the next Day,
 ' and saw the principal Elders of the
 ' Nation, who were all adorn'd with
 ' Plumes of Feathers, and cloath'd with
 ' their richest Skins, coming to meet
 ' him, at the distance of 200 Paces from
 ' the Village. My Brother receiv'd
 ' 'em at the Head of his Company,
 ' and the first Salute being given with
 ' Reciprocal Compliments, he was
 ' conducted to the Village by the Com-
 ' mander in chief a-crofs a very fine
 ' Body of young Men, drawn up in
 ' Arms, and thro' a very great concourse
 ' of People: Afterwards he and his
 ' Company were led into a Quarter,
 ' which seem'd to constitute a separat-
 ' ed Hamlet, and were there nobly en-
 ' tertain'd. The Commander was con-
 ' vinced of the Magnificence of our
 ' Prince, by the Character he receiv'd
 ' of him from *M. de la Salle*, acknow-
 ' ledg'd him as his Sovereign, and made
 ' my Brother a Present of six good
 ' Horses, and of his finest Skins; who on
 ' the other side presented the said Com-
 ' mander with divers Hatchets, Sizers,
 ' Knives, and Razors, which he ac-
 ' cepted with a great deal of Complaisance.

' cency
 ' the A
 ' call'd
 ' and t
 ' to pr
 ' with
 ' the S
 ' ranni
 ' Visit,
 ' the fa
 ' promi
 ' made
 ' they t
 ' done, t
 ' ship w
 ' The
 ' at the
 ' the Ce
 ' pass in
 ' receiv'
 ' ing wi
 ' and the
 ' And inc
 ' equal A
 ' The Pa
 ' der to
 ' Horses,
 ' longing
 ' to be f
 ' Pullers,
 ' could di
 ' cenc

ency and Satisfaction. At that time the Ambassadors of a certain Nation call'd the *Choumans*, resided there, Ambassadors of the Choumans. and the occasion of their Embassie was to propose the making of a League with 'em, to carry on a War against the *Spaniards*, their Enemies, and Tyrannical Persecutors: They gave us a Visit, and sollicitated us to enter into the same League; insomuch, that we promised to assist 'em, after we had made an end of our Voyage; and they took an Oath, as the others had done, to maintain an inviolable Friendship with our Nation.

'The *Nassonis* have their Habitations at the distance of a Days Journey from the *Cenis*, and we thought fit also to pass into their Territories, where we receiv'd the like Entertainment, meeting with the same Acknowledgments, and the same Protestations of Amity. And indeed, all these Nations have an equal Antipathy against the *Spaniards*. The Pastures in those Parts afford Fodder to numerous Herds of Oxen and Horses, and in all the Enclosures belonging to their private Families are to be seen many fat Capons, Hens, Pullers, and large *Indian* Pigeons. We could discern among them, as well as

M

' among

' among the *Cenis*, some Tincture of the
 ' Christian Religion. For some of 'em
 ' made the Sign of the Cross, and others
 ' express'd to us by certain Marks the
 ' manner of celebrating the Mass; in-
 ' somuch, that we clearly perceiv'd it
 ' to be the Effect of some *Spanish* Missi-
 ' ons: But 'tis not to be doubted, the
 ' Increase would be much greater; if
 ' these first Seeds of Religion were sow'd
 ' among 'em by Persons, to whom they
 ' have less Aversion. And indeed our
 ' Father *Recolet*, by the means of some
 ' Images, Crosses and *Agnus Dei's*
 ' which he distributed up and down
 ' easily made 'em comprehend and be-
 ' lieve every thing that he taught 'em
 ' so great is the Docility of the People
 ' of that Country.

Said Dis-
asters.

' Notwithstanding the great satisfac-
 ' tion we had among those Savages
 ' yet we met with two sad Disasters
 ' one of which was the Desertion of Four
 ' of our *French* Men, and the other was
 ' my Brother's Sickness. As for the
 ' four Deserters, it is not known whe-
 ' ther they were excited by the Plea-
 ' santness of those Countries, to endea-
 ' vour to settle themselves among some
 ' of the Neighbouring Nations; or whe-

' the

ther being entic'd by the alluring Baits of the Savages, they return'd to the *Cenis*; or whether they retir'd to the *Nassonis*. However, 'tis certain, that as soon as they had Horses in their Possession, they did not any longer imagine themselves to be among the Savages; so that we were not able to retain 'em, neither could we have any Tidings of 'em ever since that time.

' As for my Brother's Indisposition, it was undoubtedly the Effect of Grief occasion'd by the Desertion of some of his Attendants. He fell sick, *August* 24. in the same Year 1685. After three Months travelling, and within 200 Leagues of *St. Lewis's Bay*. His Sickness was follow'd almost at the same time with that of *De Moranger*, our Nephew. However, during that Affliction, we had the good Luck to find among the Savages all the Help that could have been procur'd in *Europe*, except Physitians: For we had every thing that we could wish for, particularly Veal, Mutton, Pullets, Pigeons and Ring-doves; besides, all sorts of wholesome Herbs, as well for Pottage, as for Ptisans, Decoctions,

' and other Remedies necessary for sick
 ' Persons. Our two Surgeons were al-
 ' so present, and were very serviceable
 ' to us upon this occasion; nay, the
 ' very Savages themselves, as well Men
 ' as Women, gave us Meat, Fowl, and
 ' other sorts of Venison; infomuch, that
 ' at last (thanks be to the Divine Provi-
 ' dence) by the Means of our diligent
 ' Care, both our Patients recover'd their
 ' Health, after a Months Indisposition.

' As soon they had regain'd their
 ' Strength, my Brother being of Opini-
 ' on that he ought to improve his last
 ' Discoveries; and not being able to go
 ' any farther, without entring the Ter-
 ' ritories of the *Spaniards*, from whence
 ' according to all probability, we should
 ' never have come back; took a Resolu-
 ' tion to return to his new Colony.
 ' Therefore we set forward again in our
 ' Journey in the end of the Month of
 ' *September*, 1685. But we had this Ad-
 ' vantage, that we were now in a ca-
 ' pacity to return on Horseback, where-
 ' as we came on Foot; That which
 ' was most surprizing in our new Fur-
 ' niture is, that our Horses without be-
 ' ing shod, had so hard a Hoof, that
 ' they could go any where; and had so

‘tender a Mouth, that they gave way
 ‘to the Curb, as if they had been train’d
 ‘up to it : Every one of our Compa-
 ‘ny was reasonably well mounted,
 ‘and our supernumerary Horses serv’d
 ‘either for Change, or instead of Pack-
 ‘Horses, to carry our Provision, Ca-
 ‘noos, and other Equipage; which
 ‘was no small Consolation to us.

‘However, since the most useful
 ‘things sometimes prove the most
 ‘fatal, it happen’d either accidentally,
 ‘or for want of Skill, that one of our
 ‘Horses occasion’d the Loss of a Savage
 ‘belonging to our Retinue. For on
 ‘the Banks of the River *La Maligne*,
 ‘on which my Brother run the hazard
 ‘of being lost, a Horse prancing at the
 ‘sight of a huge Crocodile, threw his
 ‘Rider into the Water. He had scarce
 ‘fallen, when that ravenous Beast drag-
 ‘ged him away, and devour’d him in
 ‘our sight. We were extremely trou-
 ‘bl’d at this sad Spectacle; but in such
 ‘Voyages ’tis difficult to avoid the sad
 ‘Accidents, to which those who
 ‘undertake ’em are sometimes liable.
 ‘Therefore the safest way for a Tra-
 ‘veller is to prepare for such Disasters,
 ‘by quieting his Conscience, and by

*A Croco-
 dile drags
 a Man into
 the Water,
 and de-
 vours him.*

‘ring himself under the Protection of
 ‘Almighty God, who is our Guide,
 ‘and constant Preserver.

‘Forasmuch as no Remedy could be
 ‘found for this Misfortune, we con-
 ‘tinu’d our Journey; and after Three
 ‘Months march, we arriv’d at St. Le-
 ‘wis’s Bay in the beginning of the Month
 ‘of *January*, 1686. As soon as we came
 ‘near our Colony, we perceiv’d that
 ‘all the Fields thereabouts were clear’d
 ‘of Trees, and well cultivated. We
 ‘there met with a great number of
 ‘Women, and Cottages, fill’d with
 ‘new Families, each Family having
 ‘its peculiar Store of Provisions, with
 ‘a Garden, and other Apartments. In
 ‘a word, every thing seem’d to pro-
 ‘mise a happy Improvement, and a nu-
 ‘merous Increase. My Brother was
 ‘receiv’d there as the Father of this little
 ‘Common-wealth, and we took great
 ‘Delight in observing these beginnings
 ‘of the Incorporation of our *French*
 ‘Men with the Savages, and the good
 ‘Use that every one made of the Ad-
 ‘vantages of this new Plantation.

‘In regard that my Brother’s Pre-
 ‘sence in that Country, was necessary,
 ‘as well for the compleating of the
 ‘Fort,

Fort, as for the modelling of this new State, we sojourn'd there about Three Months longer; after the expiration of which time, he determin'd to return to *France* to get new Supplies at that Court, and to procure some Recruits of Tradesmen, Artificers and Labourers, as well in favour of this last Colony, as for all the others that are planted in divers parts of Northern *America*. After having taken leave of every one, he set out, accompany'd with 20 *French* Men for *Canada*, and travell'd by Land to the Country of the *Illinois*, in the end of the Month of *March*, A. D. 1686.

' Altho' this Road was the most troublesome, yet it serv'd not only to discover the Course of the Rivers, of which we only saw the Mouths, in passing down the *Mississipi*; but also to give us a nearer View of all the People, who inhabit along the Banks; so that we might take frequent Opportunities to contract new Alliances with 'em. At first we cross'd the *River of Ducks*, so call'd, by reason of the numerous Flocks of wild Ducks, with which it is cover'd. Afterwards we pass'd *La Sablonniere*, or the River

Many Rivers.

' of

Quanoati-
nos, a
Nation of
the Sa-
vages.

The Fruit-
fulness of
every
Country.

of Sand, which only has for its Bed
 vast Sandy Country; then the *Robe*
 the Banks of which are inhabited by
 certain People, who all speak in the
 Throat, and at last the *Malignant R*
ver, in the Territories lying about
 which are the *Quanoatinos*, a People
 as formidable to the *Iroquois*, upon
 account of their Valour, as for their
 Cruelty. For besides that they fight
 furiously, without giving Quarter
 they made a Law among themselves
 to cause as many to be burnt as they
 can take Prisoners. As we continually
 went forward, we met with the *Tar*
has the Cappas, and the *Palaquessons* and
 declar'd Enemies of the *Spaniards*.

I shall not here give a large Description of the particular Rarities of all those Countries and Nations; but shall content myself only to declare that altho' the said Countries are very fine, generally speaking; yet in every one of 'em, its peculiar Nature and Beauty may be more especially observed. For some abound in Indian Corn, of which Frumenty is made; others in *Tonquo*, and others in *Cassava* of which the Natives make a kind of Bread.

An
 la's is
 who l
 There
 vers an
 ceas, t
 Quart
 very f
 As for
 among
 hours
 almost
 Staggs
 Rams,
 have a
 In
 discov
 Savag
 a grea
 an ent
 our M
 velling
 the N
 and w
 to hun
 our M
 usuall
 pair t
 not co
 us goo

‘ A

s for its Bed
 hen the *Robe*
 e inhabited b
 I speak in th
Malignant R
 s lying abo
inos, a Peop
Iroquois, up
 as for the
 that they fig
 ing Quarte
 ng themselv
 burnt as the
 we continual
 with the *Tar*
Palauquessons a
Spaniards.
 large Deser
 Rarities of a
 ations; but
 ly to declar
 ries are ver
 yet in ever
 Nature an
 specially ob
 nd in *India*
 nty is made
 ers in *Cassav*
 ke a kind o

‘ An innumerable Multitude of *Cibo-*
la’s is to be seen amongst those People
 who live nearest to the Sea-Coast.
 There are also vast numbers of Bea-
 vers amongst the *Ouadiches*, the *Akin-*
ceas, the *Iroquois*, and in many other
 Quarters of *America*: And Bears are
 very frequent in the Northern Parts.
 As for Horses, they are only found
 among the Nations who are Neigh-
 bours to the *Spaniards*, but one may
 almost every where see *Orignas*,
 Staggs, Elks, Wolves, Ounces, large
 Rams, Weathers, and Sheep, that
 have a much finer Wool than ours.

‘ In traversing all these Plains we
 discover’d a prodigious Number of
 Savages, who all entertain’d us with
 a great deal of Courtesie, and with
 an entire Submission to the Laws of
 our Monarch. Whilst we were tra-
 velling between the *Palauquessons*, and
 the *Nouadiches*, our Provisions fail’d,
 and we were oblig’d to have recourse
 to hunting; so that three or four of
 our Men, most expert in that Exercise,
 usually left their Companions to re-
 pair to the Woods, where they did
 not continue long, without bringing
 us good store of Venison. The ad-

‘ A

‘ vantageous

A pleasant
Country si-
tuated be-
tween two
Nations.

‘vantageous and most delightful Si-
‘tuation of the Territories that lie be-
‘tween two Nations, who are well
‘affected to ours, is much to be ad-
‘mir’d, the whole Country being ex-
‘tremely fertile in *Indian* Corn, and
‘all kinds of Fruits, affording also great
‘variety of Game, and the Pastures a-
‘bounding in Cattel of all sorts, but
‘more especially in Horses. All these
‘great Advantages induc’d my Brother
‘to endeavour to plant a Colony in
‘those Parts. In order to carry on
‘this Design, he judg’d it expedi-
‘ent that I should be sent before to the
‘*Illinois*, as well to inform you of his
‘Arrival, as for some other Reasons,
‘of which I shall hereafter give you an
‘Account. He gave me for my Reti-
‘nue Father *Anastasius*, *Cavelier*, my
‘Nephew, *M. de la Marne*, four other
‘*French* Men, and two Slaves to serve
‘me as Interpreters, with two Canoos,
‘two Pack-Horses, and necessary Pro-
‘visions. We parted *May 15. A. D.*
‘*1685.* and travell’d by Land, as well
‘for the Conveniency of our Horses, as
‘for the frequent Supplies we might
‘get from the Savages, who shew as
‘much zeal for the promoting of our
‘In-

Interel
mies o
‘On
Quart
receiv’
invited
tainin
They
great d
em; t
us all
would
Wome
of ‘em
the litt
niards,
sion to
not giv
stians f
vages.
nial, w
was no
assistin
would
whom
the sam
that wi
‘em. T
the Sav
bunda
lodge i

lle.

delightful Sit
es that lie be
who are wel
uch to be ad
try being ex
Corn, and
ing also grea
e Pastures a
ll sorts, but
s. All these
d my Brother
Colony in
to carry on
it expedi-
efore to the
n you of his
er Reasons,
give you an
or my Reti-
avelier, my
four other
ves to serve
wo Canoos,
essary Pro-
15. A. D.
nd, as well
Horses, as
we might
o shew as
ng of our
' In-

M. De La Salle.

173.

Interest, as they are the professed Enemies of the *Iroquois* and *Spaniards*.

' On the first Day we took up our Quarters among the *Nouadiches*, who

Nouadiches, a Nation of the Savages.

receiv'd us with extended Arms, and invited us to joyn with 'em, in maintaining a War against the *Spaniards*: They assur'd us, That there was a great deal of Gold and Silver amongst 'em; that they would willingly leave us all their Wealth, and that they would only reserve to themselves the Women and Children, to make Slaves of 'em: However, notwithstanding the little Respect we had for the *Spaniards*, we must needs have an Aversion to that Proposal; for we could not give our Consent, that the Christians should become Slaves to the *Savages*. Therefore to colour our Denial, we reply'd, That our number was not sufficient to be capable of assisting 'em in that War, but that we would go in quest of Captain *Tonti*, to whom we would not fail to represent the same Conditions they offer'd us, and that without doubt he would accept of 'em. This Answer gave Satisfaction to the *Savages*, who supply'd us with abundance of Provisions, and caus'd us to lodge in their best Cottages. ' The

Divers o-
ther Peo-
ple.

‘ The next day, we pursu’d our Jour-
‘ ney to the *Cenis* and *Nassonis*. The
‘ latter gave us Guides to conduct us to
‘ the Country of *Nabari*, and these la-
‘ in like manner took care to provide
‘ other Guides to convey us to the *N*
‘ *ausi*. We were equally well receiv’d
‘ by all those People, and we every where
‘ found the same Dispositions to make
‘ an Alliance with us, and to live under
‘ the Protection of our Prince. The Land
‘ thereabouts are fruitful, and the Cli-
‘ mate very proper for the planting of
‘ Vineyards; for Vines often spring up
‘ there spontaneously; so that one may
‘ see clusters of Grapes growing among
‘ the Elms, and flourishing under the
‘ shadow of their Leaves. One cannot
‘ travel three Leagues without meeting
‘ with some River or Brook. There
‘ are also Herds of Beavers: All the
‘ People are generally addicted to the
‘ Adoration of the Sun, and have no o-
‘ ther Cloaths than a certain Contexture
‘ of Rushes, or of very fine Mats, which
‘ are set out with Paintings of several
‘ Colours, representing the Sun, Birds,
‘ Flowers, &c. For matter of Arms
‘ they are altogether unknown to ’em
‘ except the Bow and Arrow; infomuch

The fruit-
fulness of
those Coun-
tries.

‘ that

that th
would
Clap o
Lightn
‘ Aft
ritories
Cadoda
rain’d
so that
styl’d
princip
forth t
thro’ t
into ve
our E
and div
naging
cal; a
but we
very of
Woode
serv’d v
dress’d
and Ve
mong
us with
keys, C
not to
Pigeon
the mic

rsu'd our Jour
Jaffonis. Th
 conduct us t
 and these la
 re to provid
 us to the N
 well receiv
 ve every wher
 tions to mak
 d to live unde
 ce. The Land
 , and the Cl
 ne planting o
 ten spring up
 that one ma
 wing among
 ng under the
 One cannot
 hout meeting
 ook. There
 rs: All the
 dicted to the
 nd have no o
 a Contexture
 Mats, which
 gs of severa
 e Sun, Birds
 er of Arms
 own to 'em
 ; infomuch
 ' that

that the discharge of a Fufee or Pistol
 would appear to them, as it were a
 Clap of Thunder, preceeded by its
 Lightning.

' Afterwards we pass'd from the Ter-
 ritories of the *Nausi* to those of the
Cadodaches, where we were enter-
 tain'd after a very generous manner,
 so that our Reception might well be
 styl'd a splendid Triumph. For the
 principal Elders of the Nation came
 forth to meet us, and conducted us
 thro' two Ranks of their armed Youth
 into very neat Cottages. The rest of
 our Entertainment was as pleasant
 and diverting, as the manner of ma-
 naging it was Savage and Fantasti-
 cal; at first, certain tawny Women,
 but well shap'd, and half naked, were
 very officious in washing our Feet in
 Wooden Troughs, and then we were
 serv'd with different Messes, very well
 dress'd: For besides boil'd Meat, Broth
 and Venison, the ordinary Mess a-
 mong those People; they presented
 us with a large Dish of Roasted Tur-
 keys, Geese, Ducks, and Ring-doves,
 not to forget another Dish of broil'd
 Pigeons. But we were disturb'd in
 the midst of our Jollity, by a very sad

*Cadoda-
 ches, their
 Reception
 of the
 French.*

' Accident

M. de la
Marne
washing
himself in
a River
is drown'd.

' Accident, which happen'd to *M. de la*
 ' *Marne*, one of our Company: Foras
 ' much as the Heat of the Weather
 ' was excessive, occasion'd as well by
 ' the Climate, as the Season of the Year
 ' that unfortunate Gentleman had a
 ' mind to wash himself in a River that
 ' runs thro' the Village. To which pur-
 ' pose, having chosen a shady place for
 ' greater Convenience, he threw him-
 ' self into the Water, and unhappily
 ' fell into an Abyfs, where he was
 ' swallow'd up in a Trice; some time
 ' after, perceiving that he did not re-
 ' turn, we were desirous to go to the
 ' Place, where he retir'd; but he was
 ' not to be found, and we began to su-
 ' spect that perhaps he might be de-
 ' vour'd by some Crocodile: However,
 ' the Inhabitants having seen the Place,
 ' where he threw himself in, no longer
 ' doubted that he was lost in that Gulph
 ' And indeed, after having made a search
 ' at the very instant, he was taken up
 ' dead, and quite disfigur'd.
 ' I cannot sufficiently exprefs how
 ' much we were transported with Grief
 ' at the sight of so sad a Spectacle. The
 ' Wife of the chief Governour came her-
 ' self to bury him; and after having per-
 ' form'd

lle.

M. De La Salle.

nd to M. de la
pany: Foraf
the Weather
d as well by
n of the Year
leman had a
a River that
o which pur
ady place for
threw him
nd unhappily
ere he was
some time
e did not re
to go to the
but he was
began to su
night be de
: However,
en the Place,
n, no longer
n that Gulph
made a search
as taken up
xpress how
d with Grief
ctacle. The
ur came her
having per
' form'd

'form'd the Funeral Obsequies, de-
cently Interring his Body, we set up
'a Cross over his Tomb: In the mean
'while, the Savages, who were Wit-
'nesses of our Ceremonies, joyn'd their
'Tears with ours, and endeavour'd to
'comfort us, by doing us all the good
'Offices that lay in their Power.

'The next day we met with the *Other Sa-
Narchoas* and the *Onadiches* on the Banks *vage Peo-
of the same River, and about five ple.*
'Leagues lower we had a sight of the
'*Cabinvio's* and *Mentons*. These Peo-
'ple not knowing what our Arms were,
'took us for the Masters of Thunder,
'and were much afraid of us at the
'same time. The Beavers are very nu-
'merous in their Country, and more
'especially in the Territory of the *Ozo-
theo's*, where they are so common,
'that the Inhabitants are oblig'd to
'burn their Skins. These People pro-
'vided Guides to conduct us to the *A-
kanceas*, on whose Jurisdiction they *Akanceas.*
'depend. There we began to
'know our selves; for we saw a
'Cross erected, on the middle of which
'the King's Arms were fixt, and some
'few Paces farther we met with a fine
'House, built after the *French* Fashion,

N and

' and inhabited by a certain Person,
 ' nam'd *Consture*, who receiv'd us very
 ' kindly, and gave us to understand,
 ' that that Seat, with all its Depend-
 ' cies, was under your Jurisdiction.
 ' After having rested there two Days,
 ' we went to the Villages of the *Tori-*
 ' *mans*, *Doginga's* and *Cappa's*, to get up
 ' to the River *Mississipi*. These last Peo-
 ' ple accommodated us with a * *Piroque*
 ' for two Horses that we gave 'em in
 ' Exchange.

* A sort
 of Boat.

' Thus being wearied with our Tra-
 ' vels by Land, I determin'd to passon
 ' the *Mississipi* again, to the River of the
 ' *Illinois*, and Father *Anastafius* was very
 ' glad that he had an Opportunity to go
 ' on board the same Canoo with me.
 ' *M. Cavelier*, my Nephew, took five
 ' other *French* Men to accompany him,
 ' and contenting himself with one Sa-
 ' vage, left me another, to serve for
 ' an Interpreter and Rower. Having
 ' met at our Place of *Rendez-vous*, in
 ' the Country of the *Miamis*, we parted;
 ' so that he travell'd over the Plains,
 ' and I embark'd on the River *Mississipi*,
 ' August 15. A. D. 1686.

' It were needles to give a particular
 ' Account of all the Nations that we

met,

met,
 menti
 discov
 chas w
 the Di
 Akance
 industr
 ple, an
 an Ar
 casions
 from t
 ten Lea
 that o
 which
 the Mi
 two Da
 discove
 Banks,
 and in
 Village
 Panalog
 all galla
 tur'd Pe
 Messes
 which t
 some G
 ' On t
 row'd c
 to recov
 ing emb

in Person,
w'd us very
understand,
Dependen-
Jurisdiction.
two Days,
of the *Tori-*
s, to get up
these last Peo-
a * *Piroque*
gave 'em in

with our Tra-
d to passon
River of the
us was very
tunity to go
o with me.
y, took five
mpany him,
with one Sa-
to serve for
er. Having
lez-vous, in
, we parted;
the Plains,
ver *Mississipi*,

a particular
ns that we
met,

met, and therefore I shall only make
mention of those whom we did not
discover in our Descent. The *Chica-* *Chicacha's.*
chas were the first that we found at
the Distance of 30 Leagues from the
Akanceas: They are a very docil,
industrious, valiant and warlike Peo-
ple, and sufficiently numerous to raise
an Army of 2000 Men upon all oc-
casions. We continu'd our Course
from thence to the *Ouabaches*, within
ten Leagues of their River, and saw
that of the *Massourites* and *Ozages*,
which is no less rapid and deep than
the *Mississipi*. We pass'd on it during
two Days, as well with a Design to
discover the Nations inhabiting on its
Banks, as to get some fresh Provisions,
and in our Passage we descry'd the
Villages of the *Panivacha's*, *Pera's*,
Panaloga's, *Matotantes*, and *Ozages*,
all gallant, numerous, and good-na-
tur'd People, who among the several
Messes and varieties of Fruits, with
which they treated us, caus'd us to eat
some Grapes of an admirable taste.

'On the third Day, after having
row'd on that River, we endeavour'd
to recover the *Mississipi*; on which, be-
ing embark'd in a Canoo, we steer'd

' our Course on it for some Days, even long ex
 ' as far as the River of the *Illinois*; and ience
 ' after Thirty Days Navigation we ar reflecting
 ' riv'd at the Foot of *Crevecœur* Fort and a C
 ' from whence we return'd to that of ny Hea
 ' *St. Lewis*. *Indeed we were then so un* was no
fortunate, as not to meet with you there mount i
(which was no small trouble to us); but contain
at present we have the Consolation to see Mind a
you in good Health. ul Expo

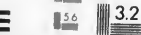
M. Cavalier having thus concluded M. Cav
 his Relation, we renew'd our Embrac that M
 ces, but I continu'd for some tim my onl
 speechless, without being able to mak Years i
 any Application to him; for, to say th that dur
 Truth, I did not well know my self not be
 nor in what Condition I was at th of seein
 time. On the one side, the loss of our ind M
 Fleet, and of the greatest part of th him? Or
French Mariners, was a very great not be p
 Mortification to me; and on the othe must fre
 side, the Assurance that was given withstar
 of *M. de la Salle's* Welfare, and of th ence af
 Success of so many fine Discoverie a behol
 oblig'd me to turn my Sorrow into ense Gr
 Joy. I was also extremely surpriz'd on you, I
 the strangeness of his Adventures; but led tha
 at the same time, the Absence of a Pe heavens
 son, for whom I had so particular alle resi
 Respect, and whose Return I had and can
 lon

long expected with the utmost Impa-
 tience; besides, the Regret upon re-
 flecting, that I was not an Eye-witness,
 and a Companion of his Travels, pierc'd
 my Heart with so sensible a Grief, that
 was not by any means able to sur-
 mount it. Neither could I any longer
 contain my self, or forbear easing my
 Mind a little, by uttering these mourn-
 ful Expostulations. 'Alas! (said I to
M. Cavalier) how could it so fall out,
 that *M. de La Salle*, my Patron, and
 my only Support, should spend Two
 Years in returning to *America*, and
 that during that whole Term, I should
 not be only depriv'd of the Pleasure
 of seeing him, but also should not
 find Means to hear any Tidings of
 him? Or how is it possible that I should
 not be permitted to embrace him? I
 must freely declare to you, that not-
 withstanding the Joy which your Pre-
 sence affords me, I find my self seiz'd
 in beholding you, with a more In-
 tense Grief, since the more I look up-
 on you, I am so much the more trou-
 led that I have not a sight of him.
 Heavens! (continu'd I) has *M. de la*
Salle resided in *America* Two Years,
 and cannot I as yet lay hold of some



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

' opportunity to meet him, or to speak
 ' with him? Alas! 'tis not my Fault
 ' for as soon as I could judge, that he
 ' had touch'd at any of the Coasts of
 ' the Gulph of *Mexico*, I made a descent
 ' on those Countries; I search'd about
 ' all the Capes and Shoars of that Sea
 ' as well on the side of *Malcolina*, as on
 ' that of *Mexico*; I visited all the Peo-
 ' ple, who inhabit those Coasts, viz. The
 ' *richenos*, *Ozembogus*, *Tangibaos*, *Ost-*
 ' *noos*, *Mansoleas*, and *Moufa's*, and en-
 ' quir'd of them after *M. de la Salle*, but
 ' none could give me any manner of
 ' Account concerning him. Hence
 ' then you may take some estimate of
 ' my excessive Trouble and Sorrow.

' How was it possible (reply'd *M. Cou-*
 ' *velier*) for you to meet us? You were
 ' to seek for us at the Mouth of the Ri-
 ' ver *Mississipi*, and on the adjacent
 ' Coasts; whereas we only landed 2
 ' Leagues above it: You follow'd the
 ' Course of that River, both in your De-
 ' scent, and at your Return; but we
 ' ways kept at a distance from them
 ' steering to the South-east, and along
 ' the Gulph of *Mexico*. By what means
 ' could you expect to meet with us,
 ' following so contrary Courses?

least C
 sent for
 his Re
 and h
 if it
 of th
 the F
 ries c
 be w
 at fo
 spare
 phev
 Hop
 in Pe
 to in
 be co
 Rem
 reviv
 is ing
 is:
 of G
 him
 nu'd
 some
 mun
 fore
 it to
 ratic
 my

le.

or to speak
not my Fault
udge, that he
the Coasts of
made a descent
earch'd about
s of that Sea
alcolina, as
d all the Peo
coasts, viz. The
angibaos, Ofa
us'a's, and en
de la Salle, by
ny manner of
him. Hence
me estimate
nd Sorrow.
(reply'd M.C.
us? You we
uth of the R
the adja
ly landed
u follow'd
oth in your D
rn; but we
e from them
ft, and alo
By what me
et with us,
Courses?

least (said I to him) he ought to have
sent some Messenger, to give me notice of
his Return. 'Tis true indeed, (said he)
'and he would certainly have done it,
'if it had lain in his Power: But who
'of those new Comers could find out
'the Roads that lay cross the Territo-
'ries of so many Barbarians, or would
'be willing to make such an Attempt
'at so great a distance? Or could he
'spare me, or either of his two Ne-
'phews for that purpose? Besides, the
'Hopes he had of seeing you ere long
'in Person, made him continually defer
'to inform you of his Arrival. It must
'be confess'd (said I then) there is no
'Remedy for what is past; that which
'revives my Spirits is, to hear, that he
'is in good Health, and whereabouts he
'is: It will not be long (by the help
'of God) ere we shall go again to find
'him out. In the mean while (conti-
'nu'd I) I call to mind, that you have
'somewhat else more particular to com-
'municate to me from him, and there-
'fore I would entreat you to declare
'it to me, that I may make due Prepa-
'ration, even as soon as it's possible, for
'my intended Voyage.

N 4

' Take

' Take it thus (reply'd *M. Cavalier*)
 ' my Brother being impatient to pro-
 ' cure the necessary Supplies, for the
 ' Establishment and Maintenance of
 ' his new Colony, and to cause two
 ' Ports and two Havens to be built, *viz.*
 ' One on *St. Lewis's Bay*, and the other
 ' at the Mouth of the River *Mississippi*, the
 ' bottom and sides of which he has very
 ' accurately observ'd, deputed me for
 ' this Employment, only with a Design
 ' that I should incontinently return to
 ' *France*, as well to inform the Court of
 ' his last Settlement, and of his great
 ' Discoveries, as to prepare their Minds,
 ' and to induce 'em to grant what is
 ' requisite upon so emergent an occasi-
 ' on. For that very Reason he also sent
 ' me to *Quebec*, and gave me a particu-
 ' lar Charge to wait upon you, in or-
 ' der to borrow some Money, upon
 ' the Receipt of which I will give you
 ' an Acquittance, and my Brother will
 ' place it to Account.

After this Discourse he presented me
 with a Letter, which was well seal'd
 with *M. de La Salle's* Seal. As for the
 Writing. I did not examine it; and be-
 sides, the Characters us'd by those two
 Gentlemen, who wrote almost the same
 Hand,

Hand, are so like, that 'twould be difficult to find out the difference. However, I read that Letter with extreme Delight; in which, the same Request was contain'd, with Protestations of an entire Trust, and of a most sincere Friendship. The Joy with which I was transported, to hear Tidings of so intimate a Friend; the Candour of the Person who deliver'd the Letter to me; and the Devotion I had made of every thing that I possess'd, to the disposal of that Person, to whom I thought my self infinitely indebted; did not suffer me to take the matter into Consideration. I immediately ask'd *M. Cavalier* how much Money he desir'd? Whereupon he told me, that he believ'd his Brother had mention'd the Sum of 7000 Livres. *It is true indeed (said I) but if you have occasion for more, you need only demand it of me. Since all that I have is at your Service.* He thank'd me heartily, and told me, that in case he should stand in need of somewhat more, he might procure it in *France*. Therefore I paid him the Sum of Money agreed upon, at that very Instant, and he insisted to give me his Receipt, according to the Order, which (as he said) he had from his Brother,

Brother. I readily consented, and forasmuch as he protested to me, that he determin'd to set out on his Journey the next day, I gave some Refreshment to his Attendants, and recruited his Provisions. We spent the Remainder of the Day as pleasantly as we could, and very early the next Morning he took leave of me, departing with a *Franciscan Recolet*, and a Slave, with a design to pass into the Country of the *Miamis*.

I was also preparing to pass on the River the next day, and every thing was dispos'd for my Departure. Having spent the rest of the Day, with much uneasiness, the next Morning was putting my small Cargo on board when about Nine a Clock I espy'd coming towards me the *Sieur Constance* my Lieutenant, in the Country of the *Akanceas*, where both the *Caveliers* viz. the Uncle and the Nephew refresh'd themselves for some time: I indeed at first I was very glad to see him, but in a moment after he threw me into a terrible Consternation: I immediately enquir'd of him, where he left *M. de La Salle*?

The Death of M. de La Salle.

M. de La Salle (said he) *do not you know that he is dead?* How! (cry'd I) *is M. de La Salle dead?*

'Tis to
dead;
Party,
the Pa
'Hey
'possib
'Broth
'and v
'thing
'a Le
'seem
'or C
Inform
Tears,
eviden
asserted
be the j
News.
this A
with C
I was
ther c
self:
I rose
M. de
dead (C
his Att
But m
that a
Blood

'Tis too true (reply'd he) he is certainly dead; for he was assassinated by his own Party, in the Territories situated between the Palaqueffons and the Nouadiches.

'Hey! what d'ye say? (said I) is it possible? Why! M. Cavelier his own Brother but now took Leave of me, and was so far from telling me any thing of this matter, that he gave me a Letter under his Hand, and did not seem to shew the least mark of Grief or Concern. Sir (said he) I had the Information from his own Mouth; his Tears, and those of his Nephew were too evident a proof of the Truth of what they asserted; and I am very sorry that I should be the first that came to bring you so bad News. I was extremely surpriz'd at this Answer, and quite overwhelm'd with Grief, insomuch, that for a while I was not able to speak nor weep; neither did I know how to dispose of my self: However, some Moments after I rose up, and spoke to this Effect; M. de La Salle, my only Protector, is dead (as you say) and murder'd too by his Attendants! O Heavens! can this be? But may I know who are those Miscreants that durst imbrue their Hands in the Blood of so excellent a Patron? They are

two

The Au-
thors of
his Death.

two *Ruffians* (reply'd *M. Cousture*) nam'd
Dan and Lancelot. Ah! wicked Wretch-
es (said I) by what Motive, or rather,
by what Demon were they excited to com-
mit so execrable a Fact? Then I entreat-
ed him to tell me all that he knew con-
cerning that Matter. 'Alas! Sir,
'(said he) not to trespass too long on
'your Patience, I shall proceed to give
'you an Account of every particular
'Circumstance of his Death, as it was
'related to me.

'*M. de La Salle* being recover'd of a
'very dangerous Disease, repair'd to
'his last Colony at Fort St. Lewis,
'and departed from thence, *March 26.*
'*A. D. 1686.* with a Design to visit his
'old Plantations, accompany'd with
'about 30 Persons; among whom
'were his Brother, his two Nephews,
'the two *Lantelots* Brothers, *Dan*,
'a Savage, nam'd *Choouanou*; two *Eng-*
'*lish* Free-Booters; and one *Hicus*, a
'*German* by Nation.

'On the first Day of their March,
'*M. de La Salle* perceiving that the
'younger *Lancelot*, being still weak af-
'ter his Recovery from a violent Fit of
'Sickness, was not able to follow the
'rest of the Company, determin'd to
'send

send
could
mean
standi
by his
be par
celot
the pl
ings
and In
gested
the m
pen'd
on th
cut hi
broug
Brothe
Excess
laid th
from
sported
swore
given
Comp
sudden
signing
greater
vourab
follow
but af

send him back to the Bay; neither could he be prevail'd upon by any means to alter his Mind, notwithstanding the earnest Entreaties made by his Brother, that they might not be parted; infomuch, that young *Lancelot* was at last oblig'd to return to the place appointed. These Proceedings which appear'd to be Arbitrary, and Imperious, were hard to be digested by a Man of Courage. In the mean while it unfortunately happen'd, that this young Man was met on the Road by certain Savages, who cut his Throat, and the News was brought the same Day to his elder Brother, who could not restrain the Excess of his Grief. He immediately laid the Blame on *M. de La Salle*, and from that very moment, being transported with Rage and Passion, he swore his Destruction. After having given himself up for some time to Complaints and Lamentations, he suddenly stifled his Indignation, designing to let it break forth again with greater Vehemency upon some favourable Opportunity. Therefore he follow'd the rest of the Company; but after Two Months march, their

The younger Lancelot kill'd by the Savages.

Pro-

' Provisions failing, between the Terri-
 ' tories of the *Palaqueffons* and the *Noa-*
 ' *diches*; *Dan* and *Lantelot* made an
 ' Agreement to go a hunting in the
 ' Woods, and follicated the *Sieur de*
 ' *Moranget*, to accompany 'em. The
 ' unfortunate Gentleman, without mi-
 ' strusting any thing, condescended by
 ' way of Complaisance, to grant their
 ' Request. But the two Ruffians, who
 ' being excited as well by Envy, upon
 ' Account of his singular Merits, as by
 ' the implacable Hatred that they bore
 ' his Uncle, had long ago form'd a
 ' Design upon his Life; having now
 ' insensibly drawn him aside, reek'd
 ' their Malice upon him, to which pur-
 ' pose they gave him a blow on the
 ' Head with a Hatchet, of which he
 ' died two Hours after, like a good
 ' Christian, heartily forgiving his Ene-
 ' mies; of whose Revenge this was the
 ' first Effort.

De Mo-
 ranget
 knocks on
 the Head
 with a
 Hatchet.

' The Day being ended, and *M. de*
 ' *La Salle* not seeing his Nephew return,
 ' nor his Companions, spent the Night
 ' in a strange Perplexity: The next day
 ' he went himself to the Place, where
 ' he judg'd that they might have been,
 ' and was soon follow'd by Father *A-*

' *nastafius*

nastafius
 neither
 found
 for. I
 situated
sipi, in
 thro t
 and in
 becom
 The V
 he mig
 and inc
 nate yo
 there,
 ing ov
 the me
 Wretc
 their F
de la Sa
 man, t
 theHea
lot had
 upon h
 Face al
stafius:
 the Rep
 ran to l
 not as
 Sense a
 their G

n the Terri-
 and the *Noa-*
lot made an
 ting in the
 he *Sieur de*
 'em. The
 without mi-
 descended by
 o grant their
 uffians, who
 Envy, upon
 Merits, as by
 at they bore
 o form'd a
 having now
 side, reek'd
 which pur-
 ow on the
 f which he
 like a good
 ing his Ene-
 this was the

 and *M. de*
 hew return,
 nt the Night
 he next day
 ace, where
 have been,
 Father *A-*
 ' *nastafius*,

nastafius, his Brother and his Lacquey,
 neither was much time spent, ere he
 found the Person whom he sought
 for. For being arriv'd in a Meadow,
 situated on the side of the River *Missis-*
sipi, he espy'd *Lantelot's* Footman
 thro the Grass, which was very high,
 and instantly ask'd him what was
 become of *De Moranget* his Nephew?
 The Villain impudently answer'd that
 he might go look him on the Bank;
 and indeed the Body of that unfortu-
 nate young Gentleman lay extended
 there, and two Vulturs were flutter-
 ing over it, to get their Prey. In
 the mean while those two perfidious
 Wretches lay hid in the Grass, with
 their Fuses ready cockt; and as *M.*
de la Salle was drawing near the Foot-
 man, to chastise him, he was shot in
 the Head with three Balls, which *Lante-*
lot had discharg'd against him; where-
 upon he fell to the Ground with his
 Face all over bloody. Father *Ana-*
stafius and his Brother having heard
 the Report of the Gun, immediately
 ran to him, and found him dying, but
 not as yet altogether destitute of
 Sense and Knowledge. Neither did
 their Grief hinder 'em from assisting
 ' him

' him at his last Gasp, at least with re-
 ' spect to the Salvation of his Soul :
 ' For he had Time and Strength suffi-
 ' cient to make his Confession, and to
 ' offer up himself to God, as it were a
 ' solemn Sacrifice. This was the last
 ' Effect of their Rage, and the Tragical
 ' end of our Illustrious Hero, and of
 ' your good Friend.

M. de la
 Salle's
 Death
 much la-
 mented

These last Words struck me to the
 ' very Heart, insomuch, that I had no
 ' Strength left to complain : I continu'd
 ' dumb and unmoveable for some time;
 ' but at last the violence of my Grief,
 ' causing me to come out of my Con-
 ' sternation by the means of a suddain
 ' Flood of Tears: ' O Heavens ! (said I)
 ' shall I never see *M. de la Salle* again?
 ' Alas! what Hope, what Help is
 ' there now left me? What will be-
 ' come of all those blooming Families,
 ' of which he was the common Father,
 ' the main Support, and the only Con-
 ' solation? What a desperate Condition
 ' are they in? How many brave Under-
 ' takings are now spoil'd, and how
 ' many Persons are ruin'd by the Loss
 ' of one single Man? Alas! is it possi-
 ' ble that a Person so venerable for his
 ' Virtue; and so useful to *France*, upon

' Account

Accou
 that a
 and b
 rous
 his ov
 nishm
 derers
 rifs?
 Oh! t
 bring
 Their
 said C
 dy pu
 thoug
 Guilt.
 did the
 or did
 Thun
 their
 These
 had pe
 termin
 the re
 any V
 the tv
 spouse
 their v
 don fo
 that su
 Leave

cast with re-
 f his Soul :
 strength suffi-
 tion, and to
 as it were a
 was the last
 the Tragical
 ero, and of

 k me to the
 hat I had no
 I continu'd
 r some time;
 f my Grief,
 of my Con-
 of a suddain
 ens ! (said I)
 Salle again?
 at Help is
 at will be-
 ng Families,
 mon Father,
 e only Con-
 e Condition
 ave Under-
 and how
 y the Loss
 ! is it possi-
 ble for his
 rance, upon
 Account

Account of his great Discoveries ; or
 that a Man so universally respected,
 and beloved even by the most barba-
 rous People, should be massacred by
 his own Followers ? Is there any Pu-
 nishment severe enough for these Mur-
 derers ; I say, for those wretched Cai-
 tifs ? But where shall we find 'em ?
 Oh ! that I could discover 'em, and
 bring 'em to condign Punishment.
 Their Business is already done (then
 said *Couture*) those Villains are alrea-
 dy punish'd, if their Death may be
 thought sufficient to expiate their
 Guilt. Alter what manner (said I)
 did the Earth open to swallow 'em up ;
 or did Heaven strike 'em dead with
 Thunder ? No, Sir, (reply'd he)
 their Comerades did 'em Justice.
 These profligate Wretches, after they
 had perpetrated that horrid Fact, de-
 termin'd in like manner to destroy all
 the rest, that they might not leave
 any Witnesses of their Crime ; but
 the two *English* Men feigning to e-
 spouse their Interest, and to justify
 their wicked Action, obtain'd a Par-
 don for the Brother, and the Nephew
 that surviv'd their Kinsman, with
 Leave to bury the two dead Bodies.

O

Whilst

Whilst these two afflicted Relations, and the good Monk were employ'd in performing their last Devoirs to the Deceased, those perfidious Villains ran to seize on the rest of *M. de La Salle's* Effects; the whole Cargo consisting in Ten Horses, some pieces of Linnen-Cloth and Merchandizes, to the value of about 2000 Crowns. As soon as they had taken Possession of all the Goods, the rest of the Company was oblig'd to make a Vertue of Necessity, and to joyn with 'em. The Brother and the Nephew, who had redeem'd their Life by silence, and by a voluntary Resignation of every thing, were likewise forc'd to follow the Torrent. Afterwards they arriv'd at the Village of the *Nonadiches*, among whom dwelt certain *French* Men, who had deserted *M. de La Salle* in his Life-time. These People perceiving the Arrival of this new Company, very well arm'd, and moderately accoutred, were no less overjoy'd to see 'em, than the *French* were, entertain'd 'em very honourably; and at the first Salute invited 'em to be their Companions in their Expedition against the *Quoanantino's*. It being requisite to suit themselves to the Time; and to

comply
Affairs,
iation,
Father
' In
Dan,
in chie
Lodgin
of all t
their Pl
his Cost
the dep
ly expe
the Ger
Spoils o
verthele
sary Ac
to meet
in their
take Car
with for
dition.
the Eng
mands;
second I
fractoin
the Eng
Thou art
thy Maste
instant,
com-

ed Relations, comply with the present Exigency of
employ'd in Affairs, they all enter'd into that Affo-
voirs to the ciation, except the two *Caveliers*, and the
Villains ran Father *Recolet*.

de La Salle's 'In the mean while *Lantelot* and
consisting in *Dan*, who set up for Commanders
s of Linnen in chief of the Company, took up their
to the value Lodging apart; absolutely dispos'd
As soon as of all the Effects of *M. de La Salle*, at
n of all the their Pleasure; diverted themselves at
Company was his Cost; and made good Cheer. But
of Necessity, the departure of the Savages was dai-
The Brother ly expected. The *English* Man and
had redeem'd the *German*, that had no share in the
by a volunta- Spoils of the Deceased, and who ne-
thing, were vertheless stood in great need of neces-
the Torrent. sary Accoutrements, went well arm'd
t the Village to meet their pretended Commanders
whom dwelt in their Tent, and entreated 'em to
had deserted take Care that they might be supply'd
me. These with some Linnen for their new Expe-
ival of this dition. *Lantelot* treated 'em rudely;
arm'd, and the *English* Man re-iterated his De-
re no less o- mands; and the former made him a
French were, second Denial, with much more Re-
rably; and fractoriness than before. Whereupon
n to be their the *English* Man upbraiding him, said,
tion against *Thou art a vile Traytor; thou hast kill'd*
requisite to *thy Master and mine*; and at that very
e; and to instant, drawing a Pistol from his

Lantelot
and Dan
assassinat-
ed by an
English
Man and
a German

' Girdle, he shot three Balls into his
 ' Reins, and laid him sprawling on
 ' the Ground. *Dan* immediately ran
 ' to his Fufee, but the *German* soon
 ' ftopt his Career, broke his Head, and
 ' kill'd him outright. Some of the
 ' Company hearing the Noife, ran
 ' towards 'em forthwith, and *Father*
 ' *Anaftafius* found one ftone-dead, and
 ' the other dying: He confefs'd *Lante*
 ' *lot*, who was *M de La Salle's* Mur-
 ' derer, and had fcarce given him Ab-
 ' folution, when a certain *French Man*
 ' burnt his Hair with a Piftol-Shot
 ' without Ball; infomuch, that the
 ' Fire instantly taking hold of his Shirt
 ' which was very greafie, the misera-
 ' ble Wretch expir'd amidst the Flames.
 Thus thofe wicked Murderers perifh'd
 according to their Deferts, whose Crime
 was of too deep a Dye, to remain long
 unpunifh'd, and 'tis not to be doubted
 that thofe who fhall read this Narrative
 will conceive a juft Indignation againft
 the like bloody Affaffins.

' Afterwards the *English Man* and
 ' the *German* made themfelves Mafters
 ' of their Spoils, and offer'd 'em all to
 ' the difcretion of the two *M. Cavaliers*
 ' who only took as much as was need-

' fary

fary for their Journey ; and having left 'em the rest, came to me in the Country of the *Akanceas*. They were the Uncle and the Nephew, accompany'd with *M. de la Marne*, and *M. Joustel*, and a *Chaouanon* Savage, and I had all that I have related from their own Mouth : I was also an Eye-witness of their Lamentations and Tears; they rested Two Days in your House, and on the third following they set out for the *Illinois*. Thus, Sir, I have given you a particular Account of what you desir'd, according to the best of my Knowledge.

'I only convers'd (said I then) with the Uncle and the Father *Recolet*, but as for the Nephew, *M. Joustel* and the *Chaouanon*, I had no sight of 'em. As for *M. de la Marne*, I remember that *M. Cavalier* told me, that he was drown'd; nevertheless, I cannot recover my self from my Surprize, when I reflect on the Constancy and Tranquillity of Mind, with which he related to me the particular Circumstances of his whole Voyage, and all his Adventures. 'Tis a common Saying, that deep Sorrow is dumb, and I dare not call in question the Sincerity of his ;

' but I am certain, that he has made no
 ' Scruple to cross the Proverb. He had
 some occasion to use Dissimulation (re-
 ply'd *Confute*) ' He was willing some-
 ' what to allay his Grief, by the telling
 ' of long Stories; and besides, he had
 ' some By-ends, and some particular
 ' Reasons for such a Deportment at that
 ' time.

' I very well comprehend your mean-
 ' ing (said I) he was desirous to bor-
 ' row Money of me, and he was afraid
 ' lest I should refuse to lend him any, if
 ' he inform'd me of his Brother's Death.
 ' But alas! I was too much indebted to
 ' his Name and Family, to deny him any
 ' thing. Would to God I had nothing
 ' left in the World, and had not lost my
 ' honoured Protector, my dear Patron
 ' and my most faithful Friend! But alas!
 ' all our Lamentations are to no purpose
 ' and since we cannot repair so great a
 ' Loss, let us at least arm our selves with
 ' Patience; let us also endeavour to bring
 ' to Perfection what he has so happily
 ' begun.

At that very instant I encourag'd my
 self in my Resolution to make another
 Voyage, with a Design not only to
 carry Relief to those poor *French Men*

who

who w
 but all
 prize,
 solation
 To tha
 for a
 to visit
 ly disc
 mentio

In th
 from
 Govern
 to info
 in a W
 by wh
 make v
 This I
 M. Ca
 those
 make
 much
 Theref
 1687.
 Men,
 Savage
 Comm
 first Jo
Illinois
 back

who were abandon'd on the Sea-shoar, but also to undertake some new Enterprize, that might afford me some Consolation for the Loss I had sustain'd. To that purpose I made Preparations for a new Descent to the Seas, and to visit all those Nations that were lately discover'd by *M. de La Salle*, and mention'd to me by his Brother.

In the mean while I receiv'd a Letter from the Marquis *D'Enonville*, our Governour; the Purport of which was to inform me, That we were engag'd in a War against the *Spaniards*, and by which he gave me free Liberty to make what Attempts I could upon 'em. This Letter, in Conjunction with what *M. Cavelier* had told me concerning those Nations, who were ready to make War with 'em, animated me so much the more to hasten my Journey. Therefore I set out *Decemb. 3. A. D. 1687.* accompany'd with five *French Men*, four *Chaouanous*, and some other Savages, and left my Cousin *De Liette*, Commander of Fort St. Lewis. My first Journey ended in the Village of the *Illinois*, and I found 'em lately come back from an Expedition against di-

*War with
the Spa-
niards.*

vers Neighbouring People, from whom they carry'd away 130 Prisoners.

From thence I pass'd to the *Cappa's*, who gave me very good Entertainment, and some time after the *Toginga's* and *Torimans* receiv'd me with the like Demonstration of Friendship and Respect. Then the Course of my Journey brought me to the *Ossotoues*, where I built an House for the Convenience of Traffick. There I spent five or six Days, during which, I made new Purchases, and increas'd my Store of Provisions. I departed from my House in the Month of *February*, 1688. and after some Days travelling I got up again to the great Village of *Taensas*. As we were pursuing that Journey, one of my *Chaouanous* being attack'd by three *Chachouma's*, kill'd one of them, and himself receiv'd a slight Wound on the Pap, with the glancing of an Arrow. But a far greater Disaster beset us during that Journey. For two *French* Men of my Company stragling in the Woods to hunt, were assaulted by a Party of *Naches*, and unfortunately kill'd. We were so much the more sensible of this Indignity, in regard that 'twas impossible for us to revenge it, not being able

from whom
soners.

the *Cappa's*,
Entertain-
the *Toginga's*
with the like
ship and Re-
of my Jour-
ues, where I
venience of
five or six
the new Pur-
core of Pro-
ny House in
B. and after
p again to
s. As we
one of my
three *Cha-*
and him-
on the Pap,
row. But
us during
ch Men of
the Woods
a Party of
ill'd. We
ble of this
twas im-
not being
able

ble to come up with those Sa-
ges.

Upon our Arrival among the *Taen-*
s, the principal Elders of that Na-
tion inform'd me of the Contest they
had with the *Nachitoches*, about Salt,
of which, the latter would not suf-
fer 'em to have any share, and entreat-
ed me to be Mediatour for the making
up of their Differences. I readily ac-
cepted of the Office; so that Thirty
Taensas having joyn'd our Company,
we arriv'd after Eight Days march, at
the Village of the *Nachitoches*. This Nati-
on constitutes only one State with two
others, *viz.* the *Ouasita's* and the *Capi-*
his. The chief Commanders of these
three sorts of People being met toge-
ther, they caused me to sit down in
the middle of 'em; but the Thirty
Taensa's, before they took their place,
desir'd Leave to go to the Temple, to
implore the Assistance of their God,
for the obtaining a firm Peace. (Here
tis observable by the way, that the
Sun is the Deity which is most com-
monly ador'd among all those People.)
Therefore these *Taensa's* were actually
conducted to the Temple; and after
having said their Prayers, were brought
back

*A quarrel
between
the Taen-
sa's and
the Nachi-
toches a-
bout Salt.*

back to the Assembly, where they call'd their God to witness the Sincerity of their Intentions, as to the matter of Peace; made their Presents to the three several Nations; and nominated me for the Guarantee of their Treaty. Whereupon I promoted their Interest as far as it lay in my Power, making the best of their Claim, and at last brought the Matters to a good Accommodation, infomuch, that the *Nachitoches* promis'd to supply 'em with Salt, in exchange for their Skins and Grains. Upon the breaking up of the Convention, they took a reciprocal Oath to maintain Peace and an Amicable Correspondence one with another, and danc'd the *Calumet*, according to the usual Custom of the *Americans*. Afterwards I took my leave of both those Nations.

The *Nachitoches* provided Five Guides to conduct me to the Village of the *Yataches*, and to go thither; I was oblig'd to pass on the River *Onoroyste*, about 30 Leagues. During our Course we found fifteen Cottages of the *Naches*, and took up our Lodging amongst 'em that Night, continually standing upon our Guard. The next day, having met with Twelve of 'em apart, we did not spare

where the spare 'em, but reveng'd the Death of
 the Sincerity our *French Men*, whom they had bar-
 barously assassinated. After having
 the matter of travell'd for some Days, we arriv'd in
 the Territories of the *Tataches*, who are
 united to two other Nations, that make
 three Villages together, viz. the *Tata-*
ches, the *Onodo's*, and the *Choyo's*. As
 soon as they had notice of our Arrival,
 they came three Leagues to meet us,
 and brought us good Provisions for our
 Refreshment. Afterwards we went
 out of the Champion Country to their
 Village, and the chief Elders enter-
 tain'd us at several Feasts. Then I
 made 'em some Presents, and desir'd
 that I might have Guides to conduct
 me to the *Quodadiquio's*. They made
 a great deal of difficulty to grant me
 any, by reason that three Days ago
 they massacred three of their Ambassa-
 dors; nevertheless, by the means of
 Entreaties and Protestations to defend
 'em, they were at last prevail'd upon to
 furnish us with five.
 When we drew near the three Vil-
 lages, we discern'd the Tracts of Horses
 and Men on the Road, and indeed in
 the Morning divers Horsemen appear'd,
 and offer'd to convey us thither. I
 was

A remark-
able Ad-
venture.

was attended with 20 Fusileers, well arm'd, and so in a Condition to keep those Savages in awe. I had no sooner enter'd the Village, but a certain Woman, who held the first Rank in that Country, made an Address to me, and importun'd me to revenge her Husband's Death, who was kill'd by the *Yataches*. A little while after another Woman came to me, to make the same Complaint, and they apparently were the Wives of those Ambassadors, whom the *Yataches* had assassinated not long before. All the People seem'd to be concern'd at their Death; and forasmuch as they were very solicitous about that Affair, I made a Promise both to the Widows, and to the People, to take Vengeance for the Murder of their Husbands and Ambassadors. Then they conducted me to their Temple, wash'd my Face with Water, before they permitted me to enter; and after having pray'd to God for the space of one quarter of an Hour, they led me back into the Cottage of one of those Women, where I was magnificently entertain'd. There I was inform'd, that the Seven *French Men*, who were separated from *Cavelier*, after the Death

of

of M. d
the *Nona*
d with
to put a
once fir
Therefo
Day an
reated
and affi
would e
em Sa
Blood fo
The
other N
the *Naj*
tuated
Nations
their A
Village
mote o
tries are
of Gam
are ve
mainta
hours;
not ver
ry fine
o's. T
Faces
Parts o

lle.

usileers, we
tion to keep
had no sooner
certain Wo
Rank in the
s to me, and
ge her Hus
kill'd by the
after another
ake the same
arently were
adors, whom
ced not long
eem'd to be
d forasmuch
s about that
both to the
ole, to take
ler of their
ors. Then
eir Temple,
ter, before
; and after
he space of
ney led me
ne of those
gnificantly
inform'd,
who were
the Death
of

M. De La Salle.

of M. de la Salle, were still living among
the *Nonadiches*. I was extremely delight-
ed with this piece of News, and hop'd
to put an end to my Evils, if I could
once find means to meet 'em again.
Therefore having pass'd the rest of the
Day among the *Quododiquio's*, I en-
treated 'em to furnish me with Guides,
and assur'd 'em, That at my Return I
would either oblige the *Tataches* to give
em Satisfaction, or I would require
Blood for Blood at their Hands.

The *Quododiquio's* are united to two People u-
nited toge-
ther. other Nations, viz. the *Nappitoches* and
the *Nassonis*, whose Territories are si-
tuated on the red River. These three
Nations speak the same Language, yet
their Assemblies are not conven'd by
Villages, but by Habitations, very re-
mote one from another. Their Coun-
tries are very fine, affording abundance
of Game, and variety of Fish; but there
are very few Oxen. These People
maintain cruel Wars against their Neigh-
bours; insomuch, that their Villages are
not very populous. They all have ve-
ry fine Horses, which they call *Cavalli-
os*. The Men and Women have their
Faces prick'd, and even all the other
Parts of their Bodies: And indeed the
Fan-

The Red
River.

Fantastical Humours of Men is altogether such as
unaccountable, since that which is look'd should pr
upon as Deformity in one Country, pass the nex
fes for Beauty in another. Their Ri- Village:
ver is call'd the Red, because it actually by Susp
throws up abundance of Sand, which Chief Go
renders it as red as Blood. ail to o

I set out from thence April 6. A. D. us'd to
1690. with two Slaves, who were my Lands, t
Guides, for the Country of the Noua- Men. V
diches. As we were travelling on the sted in
Road, we met with certain Savages of hat our
that Nation a hunting, who assur'd us, y'd 'em
that they had left our French Men at ds, we
home, which was very joyful News to hat thre
me, but at the same time I had the ne other
Misfortune to lose a young French Man no's, th
of my Retinue: He found means to m since
return three Days after, but without rtainly
his Snap-fack, where I had put the best m; the
part of my Provisions, which created uch as I
me a great deal of trouble. However, Vives fe
not thinking fit to take any notice of nderstan
his Neglect, we took up our Quarters rmation
that Night within half a League of the so true.
Village of the Nouadiches, where the The N
principal Elders came forth to meet us. rts to c
I instantly enquir'd of 'em after our he the Ca
French Men, and they answer'd, that m that
they were in good Health; but foraf- ere thor
much

is altogether such as they were not to be seen, I
 which is look'd could promise my self no Good by it.
 Country, pass'd the next day, being arriv'd at their
 Their Ri- village, and none of 'em appearing,
 se it actually by Suspicion was still increas'd. The
 sand, which Chief Governors of the Nation did not
 ril to offer me the *Calumet*; but I re-
 ril 6. A. D. as'd to accept of any thing at their
 no were my hands, till they had produc'd the *French*
 of the *Nous-* Men. When they perceiv'd that I per-
 ing on the stit in my Resolution, they confess'd
 n Savages of that our *French* Men having accompa-
 to assur'd us, ny'd 'em in the War against the *Spani-*
ch Men at rds, were surrounded by the Horse;
 ul News to that three of 'em were kill'd; and that
 e I had the e other four retiring to the *Quoanan-*
French Man no's, they never heard any Tidings of
 means to m since that time. I reply'd, That
 out without rtainly they themselves had murder'd
 put the best m; they deny'd it stiffly, and foras-
 ich created much as I incessantly accus'd 'em, their
 However, Wives fell a weeping, and made me
 notice of nderstand by their Tears, that the In-
 r Quarters ormation concerning their Death was
 ague of the o true.

where the The *Nonadiches* us'd their utmost Ef-
 to meet us. orts to clear themselves, and offer'd
 after our te the *Calumet* a second time; I to'd
 er'd, that m that I would not accept of it, till I
 but foras- ere thoroughly convinc'd of their In-
 much nocence

nocence as to that Point, and that nevertheless if I could be serviceable to 'em in any thing, they should find my Fidelity inviolable. The chief Commander answer'd my kind Expressions with a Present of Ten fine Horses, well harness'd, and I gave him seven Hatchets, with a Set of Glasses.

We left their Country *May* 29. and advanc'd within a Days Journey of the *Palaqueffons*, where we were inform'd that the last Colony establish'd by *M. de la Salle*, on the Coast of the Gulph of *Mexico*, not having been able to maintain it self in a perfect Union, was quite dispers'd; that some were intermixed with the Savages, and that others found Means to get to the *French* Plantations in other Places. Therefore not judging it expedient to seek for 'em where they were no longer to be found, I took a Resolution to return the same way I came. In the mean while I endeavour'd to pass to the Village of *Coroas*, but a prodigious Inundation happening, by reason of the extraordinary Rains, which continued for Three Days successively, we were involv'd in the greatest Streight imaginable: For the Water every when

rose up
fomuch
and to
though
provide
son:
in this
Luck
small
as yet
ther fo
ses we
the Gr
excessiv
Climat
to the
ficientl
ment w
who e
day in
to treat
dance
Turkey
my Joy
Men,
Nouadie
and tha
tunity
pany.

rose up to the middle Leg at least; in-
 somuch, that we were forc'd to sleep,
 and to make Fires on thick Trees, and we
 thought our selves happy, in being then
 provided with Cassave, Beef and Veni-
 son: We continu'd three or four Days
 in this forlorn Condition, but as good
 Luck would have it, we discover'd a
 small Island, which the Waters had not
 as yet overflow'd, and we retir'd thi-
 ther for a Day and a Night: Our Hor-
 ses were somewhat recruited there, and
 the Ground being suddenly dry'd by the
 excessive Heat of the Season, and of the
 Climate, we got up in a Days Journey
 to the Village of *Caroas*. I cannot suf-
 ficiently express the noble Entertain-
 ment we met with among those People,
 who employ'd several Persons every
 day in fishing and hunting, on purpose
 to treat us, and supply'd us with abun-
 dance of Pullets, Geese, Pigeons and
 Turkeys. But that which redoubled
 my Joy is, that two of those *French*
Men, whom I sought for among the
Nouadiches, were luckily found here;
 and that I had so favourable an Oppor-
 tunity to re-unite 'em to my Com-
 pany.

*Caroas, a
 Savage
 People.*

I took my leave of the *Coroas*, July 20th. and arriv'd on the 31th. in the Territories of the *Akancea's*, where I was seiz'd with a Fever, which oblig'd me to stay there till August 15. After I had a little recover'd my Strength, I set forward again in my Journey to the Country of the *Illinois*, and arriv'd there in the Month of September. Thus the Treaty of Peace concluded between the *Taensa's* and the *Nachitoches*; the pleasure of being most kindly entertain'd by all the Savage People; and the Satisfaction of bringing back two *French Men*, whom I had given over for lost; were the Fruits of my last Voyage.

By this Relation one may take an estimate of the Riches and Beauty of all those Countries, inhabited by so many People, that are all in a manner already brought under Subjection, and who have a perfect Idea of the Grandeur of our Monarch. It cannot be conceiv'd how much that Continent abounds, as well in all sorts of Grain and Fruit, as in variety of Cattel. 'Tis surrounded on all sides with great Seas, the Shoars of which are very deep, and seem to present us with natural Ports;

Coroas, July 1685. in the Territories where I was oblig'd me 5. After I Strength, I Journey to and arriv'd ber. Thus led between itoches; the ndly enter- eople; and back two given over of my last ay take an l Beauty of dited by so n a manner ection, and the Gran- cannot be ontinent a s of Grain attel. 'Tis great Seas, very deep, th natural Ports;

ports; insomuch, that three or four Havens on the Gulph of Mexico would undoubtedly secure for us the Possession of those Territories. The French are generally so well belov'd, that to make themselves Masters of 'em, they have nothing to do but to settle there inconspicuously, and to plant their Colonies. That is wanting, may be transported either by our Vessels; as in like manner, what is wanting in our Country, may be brought us from thence. For from those Parts we have our principal stores of Skins; we might also get Silks, Timber for Ships, and divers other Commodities. If there be a scarcity of Corn and Wine, 'tis less occasion'd by the defect of the Soil, than for want of the Improvement of Husbandry. Lastly, to procure all the Treasures of Nature, 'tis only requisite to bestow some Pains in seeking for 'em, and to improve 'em when found. Such is the state of Affairs in that Country: God grant that a happy and lasting Peace may soon put us in Possession, and secure us in the Enjoyment of these Advantages.

F I N I S.

R

V

Sie

Ca

C

A De

de

M

the

Lon

A
RELATION
OF A
VOYAGE

Made by the

Sieur de Montauban,

Captain of the *French* Privateers,

ON THE

Coasts of Guinea,

In the Year 1695.

WITH

A Description of the Kingdom of *Cape de Lopez*; and an Account of the Manners, Customs and Religion of the Natives of that Country.

London: Printed in the Year 1698.

A L E

S I

I Ha
th
band,
I have
mire w
by the
Courage
weighty
Person
unavoid
to Min
Narrat
his Sea
from n
undert
gives
He
met du
Cape
Ordna
up wit
and to
Aster

A LETTER to Monsieur * * * *

S I R,

I Have at last receiv'd the Relation of the Voyage, made by Capt. Montauband, commonly call'd Montauban, and I have sent it you printed. You will admire without all Doubt, as well as I, how by the means of his singular Prudence and Courage, he extricated himself from those weighty Pressures, under which any other Person in his Circumstances, would have unavoidably perish'd: You may also call to Mind in reading the beginning of this Narrative, that you had a sight of some of his Seamen at Bordeaux, A. D. 1694. from whence he set out the next Year to undertake the Voyage, of which he here gives us a particular Account.

He gave chase to divers Ships that he met during his Course, and engag'd at Cape Verd, with a Frigat of 34 Pieces of Ordnance. At St. John's Cape he came up with an English Vessel of 20 Guns, and took her after a small Engagement. Afterwards he took a Caper of Branden-

burg, and steer'd his Course to Angola. At last he discover'd the English Guard-Ship, arm'd with 54 Pieces of Cannon near the Coast, and fought her during five or six Hours, till they both came to boarding with great Fury. But when he was just ready to master her, the English Captain set fire to his whole store of Powder, and both the Ships were blown up into the Air, with a most dreadful Noise and Hurock.

You may have the satisfaction to take a view of so terrible a Shipwreck in this Narrative, as it were on the Sea shoar, and to observe how Capt. Montauban makes his Escape with Fifteen or Sixteen of his Men. He suffer'd Hunger above Three Days, and at last arriv'd at Cape de Lopez, where he went to visit the King of the Country: He has given us a Description of the Court and Kingdom of that Prince; treating at the same time of his Religion, and forming a Project for the establishing of the Roman-Catholick in those Parts. He stood Godfather to the King's Grand-son, by his Son Prince Thomas, and embark'd in a Portuguese Vessel, to return to Europe. An English Man of his Acquaintance took him on board his Ship, and convey'd him to

Bar-

to Angola. Barbadoes, where he was confin'd in a
lish Guard-chamber by the Order of M. Ruffel, Go-
of Cannon-vernour of the English Island. After-
during five wards he was set at Liberty, and tran-
ve to board-ported to Martinica, where he was pre-
then he was sent at the Death of M. de Blenac, Ge-
inglish Cap-neral of the French Islands. From thence
of Powder, he pass'd over into France, and continu'd
up into the very doubtful whether he should try his
Noise and Fortune again by Sea or not.

All these Particulars (Sir) are related
in so plain and natural a Style, that you
may clearly discern the Integrity and Gene-
rosity of the Author. Indeed it must be
acknowledg'd that Sailers and other Per-
sons, taken up with the Management of
Maritime Affairs, are nothing near so po-
lite, as those that have Employments on
the Land, by reason that they do not keep
so much Company, and have not an oppor-
tunity of conversing so frequently with the
more refin'd Wits of the Age; but to make
amends for this Defect, they are ge-
nerally a great deal more sincere. There-
fore you need not fear, lest a Sea-Captain
should impose on your Credulity: Besides,
I have often heard him making a Narra-
tion of the same Voyage, yet never could
perceive him to vary in the least Circum-
stance; insomuch, that the Candour and
free

free Air, with which he was wont to relate
the bravest Actions that were perform'd in
the Engagements, would soon persuade his
Hearers to believe, that what he said was
certainly true. Neither did he write this
Narrative thro' Ostentation, since he him-
self sufficiently declares in the beginning
of it, that he did it only to give an Account
of his Expeditions to a Minister of State.
Lastly, if you still doubt of the Fight, in
which the Sieur de Montauban suffer'd
Shipwreck, you cannot but remember that
you have read it in the Gazettes of the
Month of September or October, of the
present Year.

I am,

S I R,

Your most Humble, and

most Obedient Servant,

B * *

R I

V

Sieur

Captain
on the

A F

and hav
tune, lof
together
should ta
Misfortu
dition ;
still mor
Private l
jesty the
did not

A
 RELATION
 OF THE
 VOYAGE
 OF THE
Sieur de Montauban,

Captain of the *French Privateers,*
 on the Coasts of *Guinea, A. D. 1695.*

AFTER having been so often made sensible of the Malignant Influences of the Planet that governs at Sea; and having, by the means of a cross Fortune, lost all the Goods which I had gather'd together, with so great Care and Pains, I should take no Delight in calling to Mind the Misfortunes that put an end to my last Expedition; were it not that the Desire of being still more serviceable to the Publick, and to Private Persons, as also to testifie to his Majesty the fervent Zeal I had for his Service, did not oblige me to set Pen to Paper, to
 give

give some Account of my Observations to *M. Phelipeaux*, in which he may discern with what Earnestness I penetrated into the most remote Colonies of the Enemies, to destroy 'em, and to ruin their Commerce.

I was not willing to enlarge this Relation with an Account of all the Voyages I made, and of all the particular Adventures that befall me on the Coasts of the *New Spain, Carthagena, Mexico, Florida, New-York, New-England, Newfoundland, the Canary Islands, and Cape Verd*, where I cruised up and down above Twenty Years, having begun to follow the practice of Navigation at the Age of Sixteen. I might also add the Expedition of the Year 1691. in which, being Commander of the Ship, call'd *The Machine*, I ravag'd the Coasts of *Guinea*, enter'd the great River of *Serrelion*, seiz'd on the Fort of the *English*, in which there were 80 pieces of Cannon, and caus'd 'em to be blown up, that they might not be refitted: But I will confine myself to the Narrative of my last Voyage, because 'tis the latest, and that which is still fresh in Memory, as having been made known publickly by the Report that was spread abroad in *France* and elsewhere, about the firing of my Ship, and the blowing me up into the Air, after so prodigious a manner.

In the Year 1684. after having ravag'd the Coast of *Carrack* I got the Wind to *Santa Cruz*, and was inform'd there, that a Convoy of Ships was to set out from the Islands
of

of *Bar*
upon
Bermu
small
Prize.
appear
out an
Convo
Merch
having
Fight.
met wi
Guns,
wife f
after
her to
adjudg
having
Ships
Month
were i
Prize,
chants
In th
had no
now an
luptuo
were c
mends
during
tive C
toully
gave v
The

ban:

Observations to
discern with
into the most
s, to destroy
rce.

this Relation
pages I made,
tures that be-
Spain, Car-
York, New-
ary Islands,
up and down
begun to fol-
at the Age of
Expedition of
Commander
ravag'd the
reat River of
the English,
of Cannon,
o, that they
I confine my
Voyage, be-
which is still
been made
rt that was
here, about
ollowing me
ious a man-

ing ravag'd
nd to Santa
that a Con-
the Islands
of

Sieur De Montauban.

9

of *Barbadoes* and *Nevis* for *England*. Where-
upon I was oblig'd to go to the Latitude of
Bermudas, with a Design to seize on that
small Fleet, and in hopes of getting a good
Prize. I was no sooner arriv'd, but they
appear'd steering directly towards me, with-
out any manner of Fear; but I attack'd the
Convoy, call'd the *Wolf*, with two other
Merchant-Ships, laden with Sugar; the rest
having found means to escape, during the
Fight. As I was carrying off this Prize, I
met with another *English* Vessel of Sixteen
Guns, that came from *Spain*, and was like-
wise sailing for *England*: She surrender'd
after a slight Engagement, and I convey'd
her to *Rochel*, where the Court of Admiralty
adjudg'd her to me as lawful Prize. After
having sold her, I brought my three other
Ships to *Bordeaux*, where I arriv'd in the
Month of *September*, *A. D.* 1694. These
were in like manner allow'd to be good
Prize, and I immediately sought for Mer-
chants to dispose of 'em.

In the mean while my Free-Booters, who
had not seen *France* for a long time, being
now arriv'd in a great City, in which Vo-
luptuousness and Luxury are predominant,
were desirous to make themselves some a-
mends for the Fatigues they had endur'd,
during so long an Absence from their Na-
tive Country: Insomuch, that they riot-
tously wasted vast Sums of Money, and
gave way to all Actions of Extravagance.
The Merchants and Victuallers made no
scru-

scruple to trust 'em, or to supply 'em with whatever they desir'd, upon the Reputation of their Wealth, and the Report that was given out in the City, with reference to the great Prizes in which they had a Share. Thus they pass'd all the Nights in variety of Divertisements, and the Days in running about the Streets in Masquerade, causing themselves to be carry'd in Chairs, with lighted Torches at Noon-day: This Excess of Debauchery destroy'd some of 'em, and four others deserted me; so that perceiving that I lost my Men, notwithstanding all my Precaution, and all the Prohibitions that I could make, I determin'd to retire from the City as soon as 'twas possible, to preserve the rest of my Company.

At first I fill'd up again the Vacancy of those that were lost, by an equal number of young Men of *Bordeaux*, who in a short time were as capable of playing their Parts as the oldest. And indeed, I always take a particular Care to instruct my Men in the best manner of firing a Piece, and the frequent Exercise, with which I usually train 'em up, within a little while, renders 'em as expert in shooting right at a Mark, and in handling their Arms, as the most ancient Free-booters of the Sea, and the most skillful Hunters on Land.

After having victuall'd my Ship, which carry'd about 34 Pieces of Ordnance, I set out from *Bordeaux* in the Month of *Februa-ry*, *A. D.* 1695. with a Design to cruise on the

the Coast
purpose
ie in th
rov'd up
discoveri
steer'd to
yth. De
eriff at a
d to be
Tis repo
Name fr
great Nu
by the Po
or Four
Dutch Ve
ere to c
ctually a
ore I cou
ppointm
or *Cape*
which lie
of Souther
net with
a the Roa
ny Shallo
s she bro
ateers on
ook a Re
nd there
em: But
ne of the
did not st
out suspes
ail, leavin
ops on the

Sieur De Montauban.

11

the Coasts of *Guinea*, in *Africa*. To that purpose I pass'd to the Islands *Azores*, which lie in the 37th. Degree of Latitude, and mov'd up and down during Eight Days, without discovering any thing. From thence I steer'd to the *Canary* Islands, situated in the 25th. Degree, and descry'd the Pike of *Teneriff* at a very great distance, which is reputed to be the highest Mountain in the World. 'Tis reported that those Islands took their Name from *Doggs*, call'd *Canes* in *Latin*, great Numbers of which were found there by the *Portugueses*. I sail'd round about 'em for Fourteen Days, to wait for certain *Dutch* Vessels, which (as I was inform'd) were to come that way; and indeed, they actually appear'd, but enter'd the Port before I could come up with 'em; which Disappointment oblig'd me to steer my Course for *Cape Blanc*, and the Islands of *Cape Verd*, which lie between the 14. and the 18. Degree of Southern Latitude. Upon my Arrival, I met with two *English* Ships riding at Anchor in the Road of the Island of *May*. I sent out my Shallop to discover 'em; and forasmuch as she brought me word, that they were Privateers or Interlopers, of 30 Guns apiece, I took a Resolution to take 'em by boarding; and therefore tack'd about, to make up to 'em: But whilst I was running a Course on one of the Points of the Island, those Vessels did not stay till I had tack'd about again; but suspecting my Design, they speedily set sail, leaving their Cables, Anchors and Shallops on the Road.

I purfu'd 'em all that day; but the Night approaching, I lost the sight of 'em, and return'd to the Road, from whence they set out, to hoist up the Cables and Anchors, and to sink the Shallops, to which they were fasten'd. Afterwards I steer'd my Course to the Island of *St. Vincent*, to pay my Ship, and to take in fresh Water and Wood. This Island is one of those of *Cape Verd*, or *Green-Head*, where I stay'd Eight Days, and at the end of that Term, having receiv'd Information from a *Portuguese* Bark, that there were two *English* Privateers of 20 or 30 Guns at the Island of *Fuogo*, one of which was refitting, by reason of an Engagement she had with another Privateer, I immediately weigh'd Anchor, and made that Island, which is not very far distant from those of *St. Vincent*, hoping to meet with the Enemies there; but upon my Arrival I was inform'd by the *Portugueses*, that they had left the said Island *de Fuogo*, five Days before in the Night, without giving any notice of their Course. Whereupon I steer'd mine to the Coasts of *Guinea*, and touch'd first at the Cape of three Points, where I met with the Guard-Ship which was a *Dutch* Frigate of 30 Pieces of Ordnance, and was cruising on the Main. She did not fail to descry me, and forthwith sail'd directly towards me, to make a Discovery: Forasmuch as I also had a sight of her, and wish'd for an Opportunity to fight her, I caus'd a *Dutch* Flag to be set up, to avoid disheartning her, and to

give her
Cannon
near er
and ma
she inc
with a
mine i
batteri
Four a
was I a
come t
of my
which
Private
means
she still
under
Points:
Dutch M
Guns,
I was
three S
me; fo
whole I
chor w
that at
insulted
excite
front.
and ap
much d
Engage
pals'd b
that th
give

but the Night
f'em, and re-
ence they set
and Anchors
to which they
I steer'd my
incient, to pay
h Water and
those of Cape
I stay'd Eight
Term, having
Portuguese Bark
Privateers of
of Fuogo, one
son of an En-
r Privateer, I
r, and made
r distant from
meet with the
Arrival I was
hat they had
e Days before
any notice of
teer'd mine to
ch'd first at the
met with the
o Frigat of 34
cruising on the
escry me, and
ards me, to
n as I also had
an Opportu-
Dutch Flag to
g her, and to
give

give her Liberty to draw near within my Cannon-Shot. When I perceiv'd her to be near enough, I put out the *French Colours*, and made a Signal to her to strike Sail; but she incontinently let fly a Broad-side at me with a great deal of Courage, and receiv'd mine in like manner. Thus we continu'd battering one another, from Morning, till Four a Clock in the Afternoon: Neither was I able to get the Weather-gage, nor to come to a close Engagement, to make use of my Bucanier Fuses to good purpose, in which consists the principal Force of our Privateers, nor to hinder her, by the means of the Advantage of the Wind, which she still kept over me, from casting Anchor under the Fort of the Cape of the three Points; where there were also two other *Dutch Men of War*, one of which carry'd 14 Guns, and the other 28.

I was apt to believe at first, that those three Ships would joyn together in quest of me; so that I tack'd round about during a whole Day, to wait for 'em, and cast Anchor within a League of the Road, hoping that at last the Shame of seeing themselves insulted over, after such a manner, would excite 'em to endeavour to revenge the Affront. But all these Efforts were in vain, and apparently the Guard-Ship was too much disabled to stand in need of a second Engagement. A small *Portuguese Vessel* that pass'd by soon after, gave me to understand, that those Ships were the same, that had

Q

oblig'd

Sieur De Montauban:

oblig'd the *Sieur Roy*, Commander of the King's *Pink*, call'd the *Deep*, to abandon the Coast, which was afterwards confirm'd by the *Sieur Roy* himself, at the Prince's Island, where we happen'd to meet.

Thus having perceiv'd, that the Enemies refus'd to fight, and judging that it would be disadvantageous to me to attack 'em under the Cannon of the Fort; I took a Resolution to go to *Cape de Lopez*, and to the Islands of the Prince, and of *St. Thomas*. By the way, I went to discover *St. John's Caps*, which is on the Continent of *Guinee*, as well as that of the three Points, and I luckily met with an *English Ship* of 20 Guns, laden with 350 Negro's, Elephants Teeth, and Wax. It cost me no great trouble to take her, and the Captain told me that he came from *Ardra*, where he took on board 550 Negro's, some of whom he caus'd to be put to Death, for revolting against the Ship's Crew, and others made their Escape to Land in his Shallop, which they had taken away. *Ardra* is one of the principal Towns of *Guinee*, situated on the Sea-shoar, being the usual Place of Residence of a Prince, who governs a large Tract of Land in that Country.

From thence I pass'd to the Prince's Island, in the sight of which I took a small *Caper* of *Brandenburg*, arm'd with Eight Pieces of Cannon, and 70 Men: She was wont to cruise in that Latitude, and to seize on small Barks that pass'd by that way,

without

without
ours.

to cause
be clean

had ta
mingo, i

under th
a sufficie

out of n
ome tim

certain E
ore the

In the
iners to

Orders t
be careen

had tak
board h

Month
he Coast

lands of
ut meeti

urn'd to
lands, w

ll'd with
made ever

nd stood
with a D

Caper I ha
or Provid

o serve u
f *Angola*

or six Mo
he *English*

under of the
to abandon
ords confirm'd
the Prince's I-
neet.

the Enemies
that it would
attack 'em un-
took a Refo-
t, and to the

Thomas. By
John's Caps,
of Guinea, as

, and I lucki-
20 Guns, la-
nants Teeth,
at trouble to

me that he
ook on board
he caus'd to
against the
their Escape

they had ta-
he principal
the Sea-shoar,
sidence of a
tract of Land

the Prince's I-
took a small
with Eight

1: She was
and to feize
that way,
without

without any Distinction of Nation or Co-
lours. Afterwards I enter'd the Harbour,
to cause my Ship, which was very foul, to
be cleans'd, and to dispatch the *English* Prize,
I had taken just before: I sent her to *St. Do-*
mingo, in *America*, to be condemn'd there,
under the Command of the *Sieur de Nave*, with
a sufficient number of Men, whom I took
out of my own Ship. But I was inform'd
some time after, that she was retaken by
certain *English* Men of War, who were be-
fore the lesser *Goeree*.

In the mean while, not to suffer my Ma-
iners to lead an idle kind of Life, I gave
Orders to the Officers to cause my Ship to
be careen'd, and with the *Brandenburg* Caper
I had taken, and 90 Men, whom I put on
board her, we steer'd our Course, during
Month and half, cruising up and down
the Coasts of *Guinee*, or round about the
Islands of the Prince, and of *St. Omer*, with-
out meeting any Enemy. Afterwards I re-
turn'd to the Road of the former of those
Islands, where I caus'd my Ship to be victu-
all'd with all possible speed; and having
made every thing ready, I weigh'd Anchor,
and stood in directly for *St. Thomas's* Island,
with a Design to sell or to truck away the
Caper I had taken. And indeed, I barter'd her
for Provisions, not having a sufficient Store
to serve us whilst we cruis'd along the Coasts
of *Angola*, where I determin'd to pass five
or six Months, to avoid a Privateer which
the *English* were building in those Parts of

Guinee: They actually fitted out three Men of War and a Fire-Ship, to seek for me in the Road of *St. Thomas*, where they judg'd that I was to continue for some time. At my departure from that Island I descry'd a Ship riding at Anchor, and making towards her, I gave her Chase for a long time, but I could not by any means hinder her from getting a-shoar, and falling in with the Island of *St. Omer*. I mis'd it not taking her 150 Pounds of Gold Dust which that *Dutch* Interloper had traded for on the Coast.

Afterwards I steer'd to the Coasts of *Angola*, which are situated above 250 Leagues beyond the Equinoctial Line. I arriv'd there *September 22.* and got Information at the distance of three Leagues from the Port of *Cabinda*, that there were two *English* Vessels, laden with Negro's. Forasmuch as I lay under the Wind of that Port I kept off from the Shoar, hoping that the next day the South-west Wind, that usually blows from the Main, would convey me directly into the Port. That Morning, very early, I descry'd a Ship with *English* Colours making up towards me, yet I did not at first take her to be a Man of War, but discovered some time after, that she carry'd 54 Pieces of Ordnance. I us'd all the Precaution imaginable not to fright her away and set up *Dutch* Colours to make up to her with greater Facility: The *English* Ship on the other side did almost the same thing and

and by t
discharg
to draw
Design,
p, steer
believe t
that our
ails, or
We pass
Day, til
he ince
Cannon-f
t last th
ood min
within G
Cannon
he to pu
wer her
the *Englis*
pouring
road-side
such as f
men kill'
earer, I
making a
orts to g
aining to
nce I wa
because w
aving ap
eing her
who lay hi
nd they r
con abate

ed out three
 , to seek for
 , where they
 nue for some
 m that Island
 Anchor, and
 her Chase for
 by any means
 ar, and falling
 . I mis'd it
 of Gold Dust
 had traded for
 Coasts of An
 e 250 League
 e. I arriv'd
 nformation a
 es from the
 ere two En
 gro's. For a
 d of that Port
 ping that the
 l, that usually
 convey me di
 orning, very
 n *English* Co
 et I did not a
 Var, but dis
 t she carry'd
 l all the Pre
 ht her away
 ke up to her
English Ship or
 same thing
 and

and by the Cannon-Shot, which she boldly
 discharg'd from time to time, endeavour'd
 to draw near us. Having perceiv'd her
 Design, I feign'd to wait for her coming
 up, steering very slowly, to induce her to
 believe that my Ship was over-loaded, or
 that our Course was hinder'd for want of
 sails, or a sufficient Complement of Men.
 We pass'd after this manner from Break of
 Day, till Ten a Clock in the Morning :
 she incessantly maintain'd her Flag with
 Cannon-shot without Balls ; but perceiving
 at last that I did not do the like to make
 good mine, and that we were already come
 within Gun-shot one of another, she let off
 Cannon loaded with Ball, which oblig'd
 me to put out *French* Colours, and to an-
 swer her Salute. At the sight of that Flag,
 the *English* Man of War, without endea-
 vouring to get the Wind of us, let fly two
 broad-sides, which I receiv'd without so
 much as firing one Gun, altho I had seven
 Men kill'd: I hop'd that being come a little
 nearer, I might render her incapable of
 making an Escape; using my utmost Ef-
 orts to get close within Fufee-shot, deter-
 mining to embolden her to come on Board,
 since I was not in a condition to board her,
 because we were to the Leeward. At last,
 having approach'd by little and little, and
 seeing her within the reach of my Fusileers,
 who lay hid under Deck, I caus'd 'em to get up,
 and they made so continual a Fire, that they
 soon abated that of the Enemies.

In the mean while, forasmuch as their Company consisted of above Three Hundred Men, and they were also sensible that their Design could not be accomplish'd by the discharging of their Cannon, a Resolution was taken to board us, which they did with hideous Outcrys, and Threats, to give us no Quarter, unless we surrender'd: But their Grappling-Irons not being able to lay hold on the Stern of my Ship, theirs ran in such a manner, that she dash'd her Poop against my Boltsprit, and broke it in pieces.

Then my Men taking the Advantage of the Hurry and Disorder, lost none of their aim, and fir'd so furiously for an Hour and half, that the Enemy being no longer able to resist; and having lost many of their Mariners, began to despond, and retir'd underneath the Decks. I also perceiv'd almost at that very instant that they made me a sign with their Hats to give 'em Quarter. Whereupon I caus'd my Men to desist from firing, and commanded the *English* to embark in their Shallops, in order to surrender themselves on board my Ship. At the same time I appointed some of my Attendants to leap into that of the Enemies, to seize on it, and to prevent all manner of Surprise. I was already overjoy'd at the taking of so considerable a Prize; and so much the rather, in regard that after having master'd that Vessel, which was the Guard-Ship of *Angola*, and

the lar
Seas; I
better E
whateve
than my
from on
veering
tisfactio
taken t
the mea
had left
two Sha
gether,
and mac
ver was
lively R
for since
Actors
not whe
not able
selves h
the Re
might a
that are
powder,
forming
Fire, V
Cords,
a deadly
noise of
and of
all sides
crashing
bles, of
the

such as their
 Three Hun-
 sensible that
 accomplish'd by
 on, a Reso-
 which they
 and Threats,
 fs we furren-
 ons not being
 of my Ship,
 hat she dash'd
 it, and broke
 Advantage of
 none of their
 an Hour and
 longer able
 any of their
 and retir'd
 also perceiv'd
 at they made
 ve 'em Quar-
 Men to de-
 ed the *English*
 in order to
 rd my Ship.
 some of my
 of the Ene-
 prevent all
 ready over-
 nsiderable a
 r, in regard
 that Vessel.
Angola, and
 the

the largest that the *English* had in those
 Seas; I should be in a condition to get
 better Prizes, and to attack any Man of War
 whatever: My Men were no less joyful
 than my self; some of whom were going
 from on Board, and others were employ'd in
 veering the Cable, with a great deal of sa-
 tisfaction, when on a suddain Fire, having
 taken the Powder in the Gun-room, by
 the means of a Match, which the Captain
 had left there, hoping to escape with his
 two Shallops; the Ships being grappl'd to-
 gether, were both blown up into the Air,
 and made the most dreadful Noise that e-
 ver was heard. 'Tis impossible to make a
 lively Representation of that sad Spectacle;
 for since the Spectators were themselves the
 Actors in so bloody a Tragedy, they knew
 not whether they saw it or not, and were
 not able to judge, but of what they them-
 selves had felt: Therefore leaving it to
 the Reader to imagine the Horror that
 might arise from the sight of two Ships
 that are blown up into the Air with Gun-
 powder, above the height of 200 † Fathoms, † *Toises.*
 forming as it were an huge Mountain of
 Fire, Water, Fragments of the Ships,
 Cords, pieces of Ordnance and Men, with
 a deadly Havock; during which, amidst the
 noise of the Guns that were let off in the Air,
 and of the roaring Waves that swell'd up on
 all sides; one might also hear the horrible
 crashing of the shatter'd Masts and Ta-
 bles, of the torn Sails and Cords; of the
 Men

Men crying out, and of the broken Bones, leaving all that I say to the Imagination of the Reader, I shall only declare here what befel my self, and by what good Fortune I escap'd

When the Fire took, I stood on the Deck of my Ship in the Fore-Castle, where I was giving Orders, and was blown up with some part of the Deck so violently, that (as I take it) the extreme Height, to which I was hurry'd, hinder'd me from being involv'd among the Fragments of the Ships, where I must inevitably have been crush'd in a thousand pieces: I fell back into the Sea, quite stunn'd, and continu'd for a long while under Water, without being able to recover my self; till at last struggling in the Water, as a Man, who is afraid of being drown'd, I got above it, and caught hold of a piece of Mast that lay near me. Then I cry'd out to some of my Men whom I saw swimming round about me, and exhorted 'em to be of good Courage, hoping that we might save our selves if we could find some of our Shallops. But that which troubl'd me more than my own Misfortune, was the sight of two half Bodies, in which there was still some Remainder of Life, floating on the Water, and leaving the Place where they sunk stain'd with their Blood; as also to see round about me an infinite number of Limbs and Members torn from Bodies, and the greatest part of 'em spitted on the Splinters

of

f Wood
men havi
the Wrec
ne that
top a H
small Bo
Whereup
who had
very one
o great
ast our
ve all go
ur Mast
legs shot
three or
that serv
we fough
and a sma
ish'd our
bly coule
rine Prov
ecure our
As soon
my self al
ran out c
and which
being blow
for me w
with a pie
the Woun
was done
were wou
without a
know whi

oken Bones, f Wood. In the mean while, one of my
agination of Men having espy'd an entire Shallop amidst
e here what the Wreck, that swam on the Water, told
d Fortune I me that 'twas requisite to endeavour to
ood on the op a Hole therein, and to take out a
affle, where small Boat, which was enclos'd within it.
s blown up Whereupon about Fifteen or Sixteen of us,
o violently, who had escaped, made up to the Shallop,
Height, to every one on his piece of Wood, and took
me from o great Care to clear our Boat, that at
ments of the last our Attempt prov'd successful. Thus
have been ve all got into it, and not long after sav'd
I fell back our Master-Gunner, who had one of his
l continu'd legs shot off in the Fight. We took up
hout being three or four Oars, or pieces of Planks,
last strug- that serv'd us for the same use. Then
who is a- we fought for somewhat to make a Sail,
ove it, and nd a small Mast; and after having fur-
at lay near nish'd our selves in the best manner we pos-
of my Men sibly could, we entirely rely'd upon the Di-
about me, vine Providence, which alone was able to
d Courage, secure our Life and Safety.

As soon as I had ceas'd from Work, I found
r selves if my self all over besmear'd with Blood that
lops. But ran out of a Wound I receiv'd in my Head,
an my own and which was apparently occasion'd by my
o half Bo- being blown up. Therefore Lint was made
some Re- for me with my Handkerchief, and a Band
Water, and with a piece of my Shirt, having first wash'd
nk stain'd the Wound with Urine. The same thing
e round a- was done for others of our Company, who
of Limbs were wounded, whilst our Shallop sail'd
and the without any sight of Land, neither did we
Splinters know whither we were steering; but that
of which

which added to our Affliction was, that we had no Provisions, and had already pass'd three Days without either eating or drinking; insomuch, that one of our Men, quite worn out with Hunger and Thirst, drank so great a quantity of salt Water, that he burst. The greatest part of our Company vomited continually, whether they receiv'd any Injury from the Water they swallow'd upon their falling into the Sea, as it befel me, or from that which they were necessitated to drink. As for my self, I was a long time indispos'd, so that my Body swell'd extremely, and a great number of small Pimples broke forth throughout my Body: But I am apt to believe, the cure of my Dropsie, and the Health that I have, in some measure recover'd, and which is by degrees more and more restor'd, to be chiefly owing to a Quartan-Ague, that seiz'd on me a little while after that Misfortune. I do not reckon up the other Inconveniences that were occasion'd by so desperate a Blow, it being impossible that they should not befall any Person under my Circumstances. The Fire of the Powder burnt all my Hair, my whole Face, and all over one side of my Body, and I became insensible of that Accident, which commonly happens among the Cannoniers, who serve at Sea; that is to say, I voided Blood thro' the Nose, Ears and Mouth. I know not whether the Blast of the Gun-powder produces that Effect, by excessively dilating the

Vessels

was, that w
 already pass'd
 ing or drink
 ur Men, quite
 Thirst, drank
 ater, that he
 our Company
 they receiv'd
 ey swallow'd
 a, as it befel
 were necessi
 elf, I was a
 at my Body
 t number of
 oughout my
 ve, the cure
 n that I have
 and which is
 tor'd, to be
 Ague, that
 er that Mis
 he other In
 on'd by fo
 ossible that
 n under my
 the Powder
 ace, and all
 d I became
 n commonly
 , who serve
 Blood thro'
 I know not
 nder pro
 dilating the
 Vessels

vessels that contain the Blood in our Body,
 so that the ends of the Branches let it out,
 or whether the great Noise and Commotion
 that it causes in those Organs, obliges the
 Veins to open: But let the case be how it
 will, 'tis of no great moment, since this
 is not a proper Place to hold a Consultation
 of Physitians, as long as we are ready to be
 starv'd with Hunger; nor to enquire what
 became of all the *English* Men, when we had
 much ado to save our selves.

We continu'd our Course by rowing up
 the Current, because we knew it came from
 the Port of *Cabinda*; but forasmuch as the
 Wind was contrary, we could never reach
 it; and we were forc'd to content our selves
 only to make *Cape Corfa* if it were possible,
 which is distant Twelve Leagues from that
 of *Catherfna*, where we were not able to
 land, by reason of a Bar, which renders the
 Coast inaccessible. That was our Design,
 but Hunger hinder'd us from putting it in
 Execution, and 'twas requisite to overcome
 the Obstacles that Nature laid in our way,
 by getting a-shoar notwithstanding the Bar,
 which we did at last, with a great deal of
 Difficulty, hoping to meet with some Ne-
 gro, who might supply us with Victuals.
 Therefore one of our Company being det-
 tach'd to seek for somewhat to appease our
 Hunger, had the good Luck to find in a
 Pond that the Sea had form'd hard by, good
 store of Oysters sticking to certain Branches,
 and immediately ran to give us notice of

this

this Discovery. Whereupon we all got up the Channel, to that Pond; and being arriv'd there, eat Oysters with a very good Appetite; opening 'em with Knives we had in our Pockets, which we lent one to another very charitably. After having spent two Days there, I divided my Men into three small Bands, and sent 'em to seek for Provisions and Habitations farther up the Land, with Orders to return to the Shallop in the Evening. I also went forth with the rest, but we did not meet with an Habitation, nor any Footsteps of Men. We only saw many Herds of Buffles, of the bigness of an Ox, which fled from us as we drew near 'em. Thus the whole Day being spent, without finding any thing, we all came back to the Shallop to feed upon Oysters, and took a Resolution to depart from that Place the next day, to go to *Cape Corfa*, to the Leeward of which is situated a large Port, where the Vessels that come from Cruising, take in fresh Water and Wood. The Negro's who inhabit the Country as soon as they are inform'd of the Arrival of any Vessels, by the discharging of their Cannon, instantly repair to the Shoar, bringing Provisions to be exchange'd for Brandy, Knives, Hatchets, and other Toys. They are oblig'd to take up their Habitation far from the Sea, by reason that all those Coasts are surrounded with Marshy Grounds. We were no sooner arriv'd at that Cape, but we heard a great noise made by the Negro's,

who

who came
lay at An
ry amon
some of
had very
cessary
modities
meet wi
ledge of
'em, ne
to persw
tauban,
figur'd; a
that desi
However
their La
that I w
and that
what to
any mea
requisite
conduct
of the H
he woul
formerly
At last
whole C
Prince.
tions of
tle and
their Mi
some Ba
longer
we arriv

ban?
 we all got
 ; and being
 a very good
 knives we had
 one to ano
 having spent
 Men into
 n to seek for
 ther up the
 the Shallop
 rth with the
 an Habitati-
 We only saw
 gness of an
 w near 'em.
 nt, without
 back to the
 and took a
 t Place the
 to the Lee-
 arge Port,
 n Cruising,
 The Ne-
 as soon as
 al of any
 r Cannon,
 ng Pro-
 y, Knives,
 are oblig'd
 from the
 ts are sur-
 We were
 but we
 Negro's,
 who

who came to sell Wood to the Ships that lay at Anchor in the Port, and I made enquiry among 'em, endeavouring to find out some of my Acquaintance: For since they had very frequently supply'd me with necessary Refreshments, Wood and other Commodities in my other Voyages; I hop'd to meet with some Persons that had Knowledge of me; but altho I knew many of 'em, nevertheless 'twas almost impossible to perswade 'em, that I was Captain *Montauban*, in regard that I was so much disfigur'd; and they all took me for an Impostor that design'd to impose on their Credulity. However, I took the Liberty to tell 'em in their Language, which I understood a little, that I was ready to starve with Hunger, and that I entreated 'em to give me somewhat to eat: But I could not prevail by any means whatever, and 'twas absolutely requisite for me to beg the favour of 'em to conduct me to Prince *Thomas*, who is the Son of the King of that Country, hoping that he would call to mind the good Offices I had formerly done him.

At last I found means to introduce my whole Company into the Presence of that Prince. We pass'd at first thro the Habitations of those Negro's, and began by little and little, to make some Impressions on their Mind; insomuch, that they gave us some *Banana's*, which are a kind of Figs, longer than ones Hand. The next day we arriv'd at Prince *Thomas's* Seat, but I was
 in

in so sorry an Equipage, that I could not make him take any Cognizance of me, by all the signs I gave him, either in the *Moorish* Language, or in that of the *Portugueses*, which he speaks very fluently. Forasmuch as in bathing with him one day, he had seen a Scar occasion'd by a Musquet-shot I had receiv'd in my Thigh; he told me that 'twas requisite at that very Instant to know whether I really were Capt. *Montauban*; and if I were not the Person, he would take Care that I should lose my Head. Whereupon he ask'd me whether I had not such a Scar; so that after having shew'd it to him, he immediately embrac'd me, and told me that he was very much concern'd to see me in so deplorable a Condition. At first he caus'd wholesome Victuals to be distributed to all my Retinue, and caus'd 'em to be lodg'd in separate Apartments, giving particular Orders to the Negro's, with whom they were quarter'd, to take all possible Care of 'em. As for my self, he retain'd me in his Court, and caus'd me continually to eat at his own Table. When I was a little refresh'd, he acquainted me with his Intention to conduct me to his Father, whose usual Place of Residence was five or six Leagues distant from thence; that is to say, ten or twelve from the Sea-shoar. Whereupon I gave him to understand, that I was very sensible of the Honour he did me, with extreme Satisfaction; and humbly entreated him at the same time to give me leave to take my Free-Booters a-

long

long wi
Pieces o
to appe
condesce
desir'd,
out alto
up the R
the Cour
that one
Upon
a Village
tages,
where th
ons, w
that ha
his Favo
me in Pr
my Atte
We four
mentatio
Priest of
Papa, d
that the
which is
for Prie
in great
those Pe
Holy Ma
time of
was in M
lick Aud
wait par
Lodging
because

ban.
 t I could no
 nce of me, by
 r in the Moor
 he Portugueses
 Forasmuch
 day, he had
 usquet-shot
 he told me
 ery Instant to
 Capt. Montau-
 son, he would
 se my Head.
 ner I had not
 g shew'd it to
 'd me, and
 concern'd to
 tion. At first
 e distributed
 to be lodg'd
 articular Or-
 m they were
 e of'em. As
 Court, and
 s own Table.
 e acquaint-
 nduct me to
 f Residence
 rom thence ;
 m the Sea-
 to under-
 of the Ho-
 atisfaction,
 e same time
 -Booters a-
 long

long with me, and to bestow on us some Pieces of Stuff to put us in an Equipage fit to appear before so great a Monarch: He condescended to grant every thing that I desir'd, so that three Days after, we set out altogether in a large Canoo, and pass'd up the River of *Cape de Lopez*, by reason that the Country is so full of Fens and Marshes, that one cannot travel thro' it by Land.

Upon our Arrival at the King's Court, in a Village, consisting of three Hundred Cottages, cover'd with Palm-Tree-Leaves, where the King keeps his Wives and Relations, with some other Negro Families, that have obtain'd the greatest Share of his Favour; a Lodging was provided for me in Prince *Thomas's* Apartments, and all my Attendants were dispos'd of in others. We found the Inhabitants making great Lamentation and Mourning, because the chief Priest of their Religion, whom they call'd *Papa*, dy'd that very Day; and in regard that the Funeral Pomp was to commence, which is usually continu'd for Seven Days, for Priests of his Quality. Indeed he was in great Veneration and Esteem among those People, who look'd upon him as a Holy Man. Forasmuch as during the whole time of that doleful Solemnity, the King was in Mourning, and admitted none to publick Audience, Prince *Thomas* advis'd me to wait patiently, and not to stir out of my Lodging, unless it were to visit his Majesty, because it was the Custom of his Nation.

How-

However, I could not forbear going to take a view of the Funeral Procession, yet could discern nothing but a great Concourse of People round about the Corps of the Deceased Person. In the mean while, I was well entertain'd by the Order of Prince *Thomas*, who was gon to see his Father. Indeed there was no want of *Banana's*, Elephants Flesh, and River-Fish; but we had neither Bread nor Wine, nor any kind of Sawce, as it may be easily imagin'd. My Men were treated in like manner in their Apartments, during the whole time of our Abode in that Place.

At the end of Eight Days Prince *Thomas* came to us, and introduc'd us into the Presence of the King his Father; he is a portly Negro, of a tall Stature, well shap'd, and aged about Fifty Years; who, to do me greater Honour, upon his Son's Recommendation, went out of his House, on purpose to receive me, and advanc'd some Paces forward to meet me. He leant on four or five Women, who supported him on all sides, shewing a certain Grandeur, after a very confused and odd manner. He was surrounded with a great number of Negroes, arm'd with Lances and Fuses, which they discharg'd from time to time with very little Order: Many Trumpeters and Drummers march'd before him, and at the Head of that Company were carry'd divers Standards, of the Colour of those of *Holland*. He had no other Cloaths than a piece of Cot-

bear going to
 procession, yet
 great Concour
 of the De
 while, I was well
 Prince Thomas
 Indeed there
 phants Fiesh,
 neither Bread
 Sawce, as it
 y Men were
 Apartments,
 Abode in that
 Prince Thomas
 into the Pre-
 he is a portly
 shap'd, and
 so, to do me
 s Recommen-
 , on purpos
 me Paces for-
 on four or
 him on all
 eur, after a
 er. He was
 r of Negroes,
 which they
 with very lit-
 and Drum-
 at the Head
 divers Stan-
 Holland. He
 ce of Cot-

ton-Cloth, with white and blue Stripes,
 with which some Parts were only cover'd
 by several Folds made round about his Body.
 He was pleas'd to make me sensible of his
 Amity and Respect for me, by many Demon-
 strations; and having stretch'd out his Hand,
 told me, that 'twas the first time he gave it
 to any Man. When we were arriv'd at his
 House, he sat down at the Door, and caus'd
 me to be placed on one side, and his Son on
 the other. Then he ask'd me several Que-
 stions about the Grandeur and Power of the
 King my Master; and after I had acquaint-
 ed him, that he alone at present carry'd on
 a War against the *English* and *Hollanders*, (of
 whom his Majesty had some knowledge, as
 having often seen 'em at *Cape de Lopez*) and
 that he likewise maintain'd it against the
Germans and *Spaniards*, more potent Na-
 tions than the former, he told me that he
 was well satisfied with my Narrative, and
 that he had a mind to drink a Health to the
 King of *France*. Whereupon some Palm-
 Wine was immediately brought to him,
 which was not very disagreeable to the Pa-
 late, and his Female Attendants serv'd him
 with it in a large Crystal-Glass. As soon as
 he began to take the Glass, the Negroes and
 Negresses, who attended in great numbers,
 held up his right Arm, and continually kept
 it steady in the same posture, till he had made
 an end of drinking. Afterwards a great noise
 was made with the Trumpets and Drums,
 and a Volley of Musket, or rather Fufee-shot.

Then Prince *Thomas* ask'd me what was the Name of the King of *France*; and after I had made Answer that he was call'd *Lewis the Great*, he told me he was desirous that I should stand God-father to a Child he had, aged only seven or eight Months, and that I should name him *Lewis the Great*; whereupon I could not forbear smiling a little. He promis'd me likewise that at the first Voyage I should make to his Country he would deliver him into my Hands, to be convey'd to *France*, and presented to the King, for whose Service he design'd him; being well pleased that his Son should be educated after the manner of that Nation, and in the Court of so great a Monarch. I also engag'd on the other side, that the very first time I should come back to *Guinee*, I would not fail to put him in mind of his Promise, to the end that at my Return to *France* I might set before the King the greatest Present that could possibly be made; namely, the Son of Prince *Thomas*. Pray assure him (said that Prince) that I am one of his particular Friends, and that if he stand in need of my Service I will pass over into *France*, with all the Lances and Fusées belonging to the King my Father; that is to say, with all the Forces of the Kingdom. Then the King resuming his Discourse gave me to understand, that he also would take a Progress thither in Person, if it were requisite, and immediately all the Negroes and Negresses made so hideous an Out-cry, that I was extremely surpriz'd: That Cry no

sooner

sooner
Volley
foundin
Lance-
another
Shouts
somewh
know t
was I a
ceiv'd t
King of
Ceremo
pledg'd
that we
Which
caus'd t
him, m
to accep
and aft
This
Prince 7
Quarter
visit his
we pass
farther
five or 6
People,
vell'd to
never h
all part
quanti
and Ele
lephants
like tho

ne what was
e; and after
call'd *Lewis*
desirous that I
child he had,
s, and that I
; whereupon
ttle. He pro-
rst Voyage I
e would deli-
convey'd to
ng, for whose
well pleased
ed after the
the Court of
gag'd on the
ime I should
ot fail to put
the end that
at set before
at could pos-
on of Prince
that Prince)
Friends, and
service I will
Lances and
Father; that
the Kingdom.
course gave
would take a
were requi-
Negroes and
at-cry, that I
at Cry no
sooner

fooner ceas'd, but the Fusileers discharg'd a Volley of all their Fire-arms, the Trumpets sounding, and Drums beating; and the Lance-men fell a running from one side to another backward and forward, with great Shouts; so that I could not choose but be somewhat frighted: And indeed, I did not know the meaning of that Uproar, neither was I able to recover my self, till I perceiv'd that the King drank a Health to the King of *France* a second time, with the same Ceremonies as before; that Prince *Thomas* pledg'd his Father, and that 'twas order'd that we should all drink at the same time. Which being done accordingly, the King caus'd two Loaves of Wax to be brought to him, made me a Present of 'em, desiring me to accept of 'em as a Mark of his Friendship, and afterwards enter'd his House.

This Audience being thus concluded, Prince *Thomas* conducted me thro' all the Quarters of the Village, where he went to visit his Friends, and on the following Days we pass'd to divers other Villages, situated farther up the Country at the distance of five or six Leagues one from another. These People, the greatest part of whom never travell'd to the Sea-shoar, and consequently never had a sight of white Men, ran from all parts to see us, and brought us greater quantities of Fruit, and of Flesh, of Buffles and Elephants, than we could eat. The Elephants of that Country are not altogether like those of the *East-Indies*; being but of

one kind, as also are those of *Cofala*, near *Zanguebar*, on the Eastern Coasts of *Ethiopia*. The Negroes eat 'em with a great deal of Delight, and esteem their Flesh beyond any other: They make their most sumptuous Feasts with 'em, and those who were desirous to do us most Honour, presented 'em to us instead of Buffles; on which, nevertheless I set a greater Value.

Forasmuch as they were not able to comprehend the difference of Colour between our Complexion and theirs, they stroak'd our Faces with their Hands, to see whether the white Colour would pass away; nay, divers of our Company had their Hands scrap'd with Knives, sometimes even till they were hurt, yet we durst not complain of that rough usage: However, Prince *Thomas* perceiving it, commanded his Attendants not to suffer 'em thus to rub and scratch our Fingers, and spoke aloud to the People that ran after us, telling 'em that all Foreigners were white, and that if the Negroes travell'd into other Countries, they would appear as strange to those Natives, as we did among them in *Guinee*. Nay, he often smil'd to see the Multitude continually running after us, as if we had been some unknown Animals; and I know not whether he were displeas'd to see us thus pester'd by the Importunity of the Negroes, or whether he might not take some Delight in observing the Sottishness of those People: And indeed, I had sometimes an opportunity to take notice of all their extravagant Fopperies. At

At la
pany'd
Prince
take le
me in a
the Cu
promis
to *Guin*
Canoo,
Thomas
ble Ent
to treat
desirous
a Godf
much t
had an
what to
sanctify
But t
Priest o
or reme
pronou
cramen
some of
guese Ve
to *Cape*
ter. T
roduc'd
ses, alth
maintai
But the
on of it,
ficulty o
ren Co

Cofala, near
 of *Ethio-*
 a great deal
 Flesh beyond
 most sumptu-
 who were de-
 presented 'em
 which, never-

able to com-
 between our
 stroak'd our
 see whether
 away; nay,
 their Hands
 es even till
 not complain
 ever, Prince
 ded his At-
 s to rub and
 aloud to the
 g 'em that all
 at if the Ne-
 untries, they
 e Natives, as
 Nay, he of-
 e continually
 een some un-
 not whether
 ester'd by the
 r whether he
 n observing
 And indeed, I
 o take notice
 es. At

At last, after three Days Journey, accom-
 pany'd with variety of Divertisements, the
 Prince convey'd me thro' another Road to
 take leave of his Father. The King carefs'd
 me in a most obliging manner, according to
 the Custom of his Nation, and made me
 promise to visit him the first time I return'd
 to *Guinea*. Afterwards we embark'd in his
 Canoo, and arriv'd the next day at Prince
Thomas's Village, where he continu'd the no-
 ble Entertainments, with which he was wont
 to treat us. Then he told me that he was
 desirous that I should perform the Office of
 a Godfather to his Son, and I comply'd so
 much the more willingly, in regard that I
 had an Opportunity of contributing some-
 what to the making of a Christian, and the
 sanctifying of a Soul.

But forasmuch as I doubted whether the
 Priest of the Village knew how to baptize,
 or remember'd the Words that ought to be
 pronounc'd in the Administration of that Sa-
 crament, I entreated the Prince to provide
 some of those Priests who were in the *Portu-*
guese Vessels, and he accordingly sent for one
 to *Cape de Lopez*, who arriv'd two Days af-
 ter. The Christian Religion was first in-
 troduc'd into that Country by the *Portugue-*
ses, altho' it be true indeed, that they do not
 maintain it therein as much as it is requisite:
 But the Obstacles that hinder the Propagati-
 on of it, proceed without doubt from the dif-
 ficulty of inhabiting an almost wild and bar-
 ren Country, where the Air and Provisions

are not natural to Foreigners: Therefore in order to its firm Establishment in those Parts, 'twould be expedient for the *Europeans* to have settled Habitations, or to build Towns there, to instruct the Negroes in the Articles of Faith, and Mysteries of the Gospel, and to send Missions thither from time to time; which might be done with great Facility, by reason that those People are extremely docil, and very capable of imbibing good Principles, and of embracing any Doctrine that one would go about to teach 'em, since they have liv'd for a long time without any manner of Belief, or any *Idea* of another Religion. These Negroes being thus converted to Christianity, some of 'em might be ordain'd Priests, who might be furnish'd with Rituals, and other Books relating to the Ceremonies of the Church, and a Catechism for the regulating of their Faith, till they were capable of reading the New Testament. It would also be requisite to establish a Bishop in that Town, who should take care to send Priests into the several Habitations of the Negroes throughout the Country, and to cause Oratories to be built in the most populous Places.

Thus the Christian Religion might be propagated in *Guinee*, and would be less liable to be extirpated by the Wars that the Natives make with foreign People. A Reformation might also be effectually carry'd on among the Christians, who reside in the Kingdoms of *Fex* and *Morocco*, and a mutu-

al

al Co
tween
of *Gu*
one a
throug
Christ
same
much
the N
Priest
are no
having
having
room
Neith
vours
they
some
the S

But
upon
Princ
and n
Fathe
Relat
was C
bore
from
held
three
lemn
Magn
the
Guar

al Correspondence might be maintain'd between the Priests of that Nation, and those of *Guinee*, to the end that they might assist one another in the Preservation of Religion throughout all the Coasts of *Africa*. Indeed Christianity was planted almost after the same manner among the *Gentiles*, who had a much greater Aversion to our Faith, than the Negroes of *Guinee* have at present. The Priests, who are to be found thereabouts, are not for the most part real Priests; not having been ordain'd by any Bishop, and having only substituted themselves in the room of those who died in their Country: Neither have they retain'd any thing that favours never so little of Christianity, altho' they perform many Ceremonies, and have some Appearance of the Administration of the Sacraments.

But to return to our private Christening; upon the Arrival of the *Portuguese* Priest, Prince *Thomas's* Son was actually Baptiz'd, and nam'd *Lewis the Great*, according to his Father's Intention: A certain Negress of his Relations stood Godmother, and I my self was Godfather. I was told that that Lady bore the name of *Antonia*, which she receiv'd from the Wife of a *Portuguese* Captain, who held her at the Baptismal Font. Two or three Days after the Celebration of this Solemnity, which was perform'd with all the Magnificence that could be expected among the Negroes; some of Prince *Thomas's* Guards, who were posted at *Cape de Lopez*,

to give notice of the Arrival of the Ships, came to acquaint him with that of an *Englisb* Vessel. Whereupon I entreated him to give me leave to embark therein, to return to my native Country, in order to my perfect Recovery from that illness, under which I still labour'd. But he was not willing that I should put my self into the Hands of my Enemies, and desir'd me to have a little Patience, till the Arrival of some *Portuguese*, with whom he would readily permit me to go. However, he went to *Cape de Lopez*, to truck away Elephants Teeth, Wax, and Negroes, for Iron, Arms and Brandy, and return'd after ten or twelve Days, when he told me, that a *Portuguese* Vessel lay at Anchor at *Cape de Lopez*; that 'twas requisite to cause my self to be convey'd in Canoos, to embark there; that he had recommended me to the Captain; and that I should want nothing that was necessary for me during my Voyage to *Europe*.

Then I took care to get all my Men together, except two, whom I did not think fit to wait for, because they had taken a Progress into the Country for five or six Days, and I knew not where to find 'em. Therefore we embark'd in the Canoos of that Prince, after having solemnly taken my leave of him; and being arriv'd at *Cape de Lopez*, I perceiv'd that the *Portuguese* Commander was an old Acquaintance of mine, with whom I had contracted Friendship at the Island of *St. Thomas*. Whereupon I took
Ship

Ship w
cast An
vernou
ness, a
a whole
in that
time, a
been s
Coasts.
of the
timate
bound
fers he
bark w
badoes,
meet
the rec
were o
were h
went o
notwit
the Go
to susp
withou
upright
as to r
me all t
can be
dur'd f
Ten
Thomas
Ship, v
place,
the Gu

f the Ships,
of an *English*
him to give
o return to
o my perfect
der which I
willing that
the Hands
have a little
e *Portuguese*,
rmit me to
de Lopez, to
Wax, and
randy, and
s, when he
lay at An-
as requisite
in Canoos,
commended
ould want
me during

y Men to-
l not think
aken a Pro-
r six Days,
n. There-
os of that
taken my
at Cape de
uese Com-
e of mine,
endship at
pon I took
Ship

Ship with him, and three Days after, we
cast Anchor before the same Island; the Go-
vernour of which shew'd me a world of kind-
ness, and did the like to all my Men, during
a whole Month that we were oblig'd to stay
in that Port. At the expiration of that
time, an *English* Ship arriv'd, which had
been steering her Course on the Golden
Coasts. I soon got into the Acquaintance
of the Captain, and at last we became so in-
timate Friends, that I thought my self
bound in Honour to accept of the kind Of-
fers he made me, He entreated me to em-
bark with him, and assur'd me, that at *Bar-
badoes*, to which place he was bound, I should
meet with all the Supplies, necessary for
the recovering of my Health; because there
were certain able *Jewish* Physitians, who
were his particular Friends. Therefore I
went on board his Ship, with all my Men,
notwithstanding all the Reasons alledg'd by
the Governour of the Island, to induce me
to suspect the *English* Captain, who was
without doubt one of the most courteous and
upright Men of his Nation: He was so kind
as to resign his Cabbin to me, and to afford
me all the Delights and Divertisements that
can be imagin'd, to mitigate the Pains I en-
dur'd from time to time.

Ten Days after our Departure from *St.
Thomas*, having lost the Rudder of our
Ship, we were oblig'd to set up a Mast in its
place, which was put thro' the Port-holes of
the Gun-room, and we were forc'd to steer
with

with it, during the whole time of our Voyage, which continu'd three Months. When we stood in for *Barbadoes*, our Provisions began to fail, and there only remain'd what was sufficient for three Days, insomuch, that the Captain being much offended at his being overcharg'd with my Men, order'd three quarters of their Allowance to be retrench'd, and as soon as we arriv'd in the Port, went to salute *M. Russel*, who was Governour of the Island. He gave him a particular Account of the Engagement I had with the Guard-Ship of *Angola*, and was very much blam'd for bringing me to *Barbadoes*. Afterwards, returning to his Ship, he related to me every thing that was discours'd between him and the Governour, who forbid him under pain of Death, to suffer me to land: However, he did not acquaint me with the Prohibition, but content'd himself only to advise me not to go a-shore, to avoid giving any cause of Suspicion to *M. Russel*, which Order I promis'd punctually to observe, not being solicitous to take any further Cognizance of a Place, which was well known to me a long time ago, and being unwilling to give the least Offence to my Captain.

The next day, many *Jews*, who were turn'd out of *Martinica*, came to visit me upon the Report of my Arrival; and perceiving me to be very much indispos'd and weaken'd, they sent to me divers Physicians of their Nation, who told me that I could not
be

be cur'd
profferi
Govern
might
Port.

M. Russel
me suc
not stin
appoint
bark, a
to *Mar*
selves v
at last
cob Len
during
Place.

Th
the Maj
vernor
me his
especia
might
my He
time b
Captai
much
as to c
in a co
Island.
ner ten
know
so ill a
second
the Ev

be

be cur'd, unless I were brought a-shoar, proffering at the same time to sollicite the Governour on my behalf, to give leave, that I might be convey'd into a House on the Port. Whereupon I drew up a Petition to *M. Russel*, in which I entreated him to grant me such a License, promising that I would not stir out of the Chamber that should be appointed for my Lodging, only to re-embark, and to cause my self to be transported to *Martinica*. However, the Physitians themselves were oblig'd to be my Bail, and I was at last conducted to the House of one *M. Jacob Lewes*, where great Care was taken of me during the whole time of my Abode in that Place.

Three Days after I was carry'd thither, the Major-General came to see me by the Governour's Order; very generously promis'd me his Protection, and offer'd his Service, especially to procure me any thing that might be necessary for the Restauration of my Health: Yet I was visited from time to time by the same Major, and every day by a Captain of the Garrison; who came not so much to enquire after the State of my Health, as to observe, whether I should ere long be in a condition to be transported out of the Island. *M. Russel* himself came in like manner ten or twelve Days after my Arrival, to know whether it were true that I was really so ill as it was reported: He also gave me a second Visit seven or eight Days after, in the Evening, and caus'd me to be remov'd from

from the *Jew's* House where I lodg'd, to that of an *English* Merchant: He told me at the same time, that I should be better accommodated there than I had been at *M. Jacob Lewis's*; but the real Intention was, that I should be better guarded, and that I might not have an Opportunity of discoursing with so many People. The next day he came again to see me, and ask'd me how I lik'd my new Quarters. I heartily thank'd him for the good Offices he had done me, and to the end that he might not have cause to suspect my Men, I entreated him to give Orders, that they should be confin'd in the Cittadel, to prevent them from straggling about the Island, and from making their Escape.

Then *M. Russel* told me, that he intended to do so; but that I ought to understand that they were Prisoners of War, as well as my self. I reply'd, That I was not ignorant of it; and that I thought my self happy in falling into his Hands; but that the *English* Captain, who brought me to *Barbadoes*, had pass'd his Word that I should not be retain'd nor any of my Company: That upon his Protestations of inviolable Fidelity, and the Offers of Service he made me, I ventur'd to embark, relying on the marks of Friendship, which he had already shewn: Then I added, that my Request to him was only to grant me my Liberty, and that of my Men, promising that I would ever be mindful of the Favour, either in restoring the Prisoners whom I might carry off from the Islands, if I should

should
him wh
quire.

No,
your Ra
gallant
ness can
contrary
Pistoles
ply you
a Purse
for tha
acquair
Orders
again.

'em, w
what v
had Or
me: I
procur
at last
by the
my La
Officer
would
bark i
from

Th
which
French
Prison
Arriva
embar
ty to

Sieur De Montauban.

41

should take up Arms again, or in paying him what Ransom he should think fit to require.

No, Sir, (said *M. Russel*) *I will neither have your Ransom, nor your Prisoners; for you are so gallant a Man, that your Misfortune and Illness cannot but be pitied, and therefore on the contrary, I would entreat you to accept of Forty Pistoles, of which I make you a Present, to supply you with Necessaries.* He gave 'em me in a Purse, which without doubt he brought for that very purpose, and at his Departure acquainted me that he was going to give Orders, that my Men should be got together again. The next day he sent me two of 'em, who told me, that they did not know what was become of the rest, and that they had Orders from the Governour to stay with me: I had the Liberty to send 'em abroad, to procure any thing that I stood in need of, and at last finding my self somewhat strengthen'd by the means of the extraordinary Care that my Landlord took of me, I acquainted the Officer, who visited me every day, that I would beg leave of the Governour to embark in the first Vessel that should set out from *Martinica*.

Three Days after there arriv'd a Bark, which the Count *de Blenac*, General of the *French* Islands, sent for the exchanging of Prisoners. *M. Russel* gave me notice of its Arrival, and that I should prepare for my embarking therein. Then I had the Liberty to go to his House to thank him for all
the

the Kindnesses he had shewn me. He told me that he was sorry he was oblig'd by the Law of Arms not to allow me more Freedom than I had, and that he entreated me to afford a favourable Entertainment to the *English Men* who should fall into my Hands. Afterwards I went on board the *French Bark*, which was commanded by the *Sieur Courpon*, formerly an Inhabitant of *St. Christophers*; but I could not regain any of my Free-booters, except those two, who were sent to me by *M. Russel*, as I have already hinted.

We disembark'd at the Royal Fort of *Martinica*, and I repair'd with my two Men to the Town, to give a Visit to *M. de Blenac*, who was seiz'd with the last Fit of Sickness, of which he died. I gave him a particular Account of all my Adventures, and I perceiv'd him to be much surpriz'd to hear a Relation of so great Disasters. Forasmuch as he was desirous that I should lodge in his House all the time that I stay'd at *Martinica*, he made me every day repeat the particular Circumstances of my Engagement with the *English Ship*; and at last having found an Opportunity of conveying me to *France*, he sent to enquire after the Captain of a Vessel that was bound for that Kingdom, and recommended me to his Care. He determin'd likewise to give me Recommendatory Letters for *M. Phelipeaux*, to procure me some Employment; but the day before my departure, he fell into so great weakness, that he was no longer in a condition to
write,

write,
Indeed
to be
for *M.*
ular C
viceabl
ally ha
were in
the Pre
at that
be bef
their N
Knowl
of the l
before
word,
And a s
ritim A
Latitud
highly
ty, Jul
signal
matter
ry of
The
Board
which
Days
Port o
and con
ther I
having
Misfor
again a

write, and died that very Evening, *June 10.* Indeed I had all the reason in the World to be very much concern'd at his Death; for *M. De Blenac*, who was a Person of singular Qualities, took delight in being serviceable to all Mankind; and more especially had a tender Compassion for those that were in a distressed Condition, or lay under the Pressures of ill Fortune, as my Case was at that time: He always endeavour'd to be beforehand with 'em, relieving 'em in their Necessities, as soon as they came to his Knowledge, and made a voluntary Proffer of the Favours he was ready to bestow, even before they could well be sued for. In a word, he was a Man of an Heroick Courage, and a skilful Navigator, well vers'd in Maritime Affairs; knowing all the Coasts and Latitudes of the Continent of *America*, and highly esteem'd by the King for his Integrity, Justice and Prudence, and for all the signal Services he had done the State, in matters relating to Trade, and the discovery of the Islands.

The next day after his Death, I went on Board the *Virgin*, a Vessel of *Bordeaux*, which was also built there, and after a few Days Passage, at last I arriv'd safe in the Port of that City, with many different and contrary Sentiments. I know not whether I shall bid adieu to the Sea for ever, having been so much dishearten'd by my last Misfortune; or whether I shall embark once again to revenge the Indignities put upon me

me by the *English*; or whether I shall undertake another Voyage; to get a small Estate; or whether I shall stay at home in Tranquillity, contenting my self with the peaceable Enjoyment of what my Relations have left me. However, 'tis certain, that Maritim Voyages are apt to create in Men almost the same Passions as Gaming: For as the losing Gamester, notwithstanding the ill Luck he has so often had before, does not believe that he shall always be unfortunate, but is still egg'd on by I know not what Impulse to venture farther; so we Mariners, whatever Disasters may have befallen us at Sea, are continually boy'd up with the hopes of meeting with a fair opportunity to indemnifie our selves for all our Losses. Upon the whole, I am apt to believe, that into whose Hands soever my Narrative may happen to fall, they will find it very difficult to give me Advise as to the Matter in Debate, and even to take it themselves.

F I N I S.

I shall under-
stand a small Estate;
in Tranquil-
the peaceable
persons have left
that Maritim
in almost the
as the losing
ill Luck he
not believe
ate, but is
that Impulse
ers, whate-
us at Sea,
the hopes of
to indem-
Upon that
into whose
happen to
to give me
e, and even

